

ENGLISH

4th Prim.
2026
SECOND TERM



By a group of specialists



Contents

Part (1) Unit (1) This is Where I Live _____ 4

Unit (2) Our World, Our Responsibility _____ 46

Unit (3) What's in the Package? _____ 83

Review ① Test (7) Based on Units 1- 2-3 _____ 120

Unit (4) Let's Celebrate _____ 124

Unit (5) Exploring Wonders in Egypt _____ 159

Review ② Test (12) Based on Units 4-5 _____ 194

Unit (6) Story Time: The Lost Kite _____ 199

Part (2) Listening Scripts _____ 223



Unit 1 This is Where I Live

هنا حيث أعيش

Learning Outcomes

Speaking

- Describe different environments using new vocabulary
- Present short oral talks using the past simple tense
- Pronounce words with silent letters (k, l) correctly in speech

Reading

- Read texts and dialogs about different environments
- Identify main ideas and key vocabulary in context
- Recognize words with silent letters (k, l)

Listening

- Listen to short texts and dialogs about environments and past events
- Identify words with silent letters () in spoken context

Writing

- Write a friendly letter about personal experiences in different places
- Apply correct letter structure, including greeting, body, and closing
- Use past simple tense and environmental vocabulary accurately in writing
- Plan a presentation on "What you like in the place you live"

Lesson 1

My Environment

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



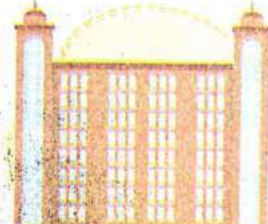
environment

بيئة



desert

صحراء



building

مبنى



well

بئر



city

مدينة



village

قرية



oasis

واحة



river

نهر

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

the Nile River

نهر النيل

exactly

بالضبط

city life

حياة المدينة

difference

فرق / اختلاف

land

أرض

simply

ببساطة

project

مشروع

advantages

مزايا

tent

خيمة

neighbors

جيران

office

مكتب

challenges

تحديات

floors

طوابق

different

مختلف

Unit 7

famous	مشهور	few	قليل
amazing	رائع / مدهش	many	كثير
places	أماكن	everywhere	في كل مكان

Expressions and Prepositions

live together	يعيشون معًا	work on	يعمل على
help the students understand	يساعد الطلاب على الفهم	use wells for	يستخدم الآبار لـ
for a living	لكسب الرزق	adapt to	يتأقلم مع
What about you?	ماذا عنك؟	learn about	يتعلم عن / يتعرف على
That's interesting!	هذا مثير للاهتمام!	compare with	يقارن بـ
flows through	يمرّ / يتدفق عبر	write about	يكتب عن
different from	مختلف عن	travel on a camel	يسافر على جمل

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past		Present		Past	
adapt	يتأقلم / يتكيف	adapted		use	يستخدم	used	
imagine	يتخيل	imagined		learn	يتعلم	learned	
live	يعيش	lived		finish	ينهي / يكمل	finished	
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed		farm	يزرع	farmed	
compare	يقارن	compared		raise	يربّي	raised	
explain	يشرح	explained		ask	يسأل / يطلب	asked	
travel	يسافر	traveled		realize	يدرك / يكتشف	realized	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
find	يجد	found		know	يعرف	knew	
choose	يختار	chose		understand	يفهم	understood	
write	يكتب	wrote					

Definitions تعريفات

city	: a big place with many people, cars, and tall buildings
village	: a small place with few people and many farms
river	: a long line of water that moves to the sea
oasis	: a green place with water in the desert
buildings	: houses, schools, or offices where people live or work
environment	: everything around us, like air, water, plants, and animals

Listen and read

Different Places in the Environment
أماكن مختلفة في البيئة

Maha : Hi, Salma, did you finish the project our teacher asked us to do last week?

مها : مرحبًا سلمى، هل أنهيت المشروع الذي طلبته منا المعلمة الأسبوع الماضي؟

Salma : Yes, I did. I enjoyed it a lot. What about you?

سلمى : نعم، أنهيته. استمتعت به كثيرًا. وماذا عنك؟

Maha : I worked on it with my cousin. We compared life in the city with life in the village. What did you choose?

مها : عملت عليه مع ابنة عمي. قارنا بين الحياة في المدينة والحياة في القرية. ماذا اخترت؟

Salma : I wrote about the desert. I explained how people lived in tents, traveled on camels, and used wells for water.

سلمى : كتبت عن الصحراء. شرحت كيف كان الناس يعيشون في الخيام، ويسافرون على الجمال، ويستخدمون الآبار للحصول على الماء.

Maha : That's interesting! I learned that people in villages lived simply. They farmed, raised animals, and knew all their neighbors.

مها : هذا مثير للاهتمام! تعلمت أن الناس في القرى كانوا يعيشون ببساطة. كانوا يزرعون، ويربون الحيوانات، ويعرفون كل جيرانهم.

Salma : And city life was different. People lived in tall buildings, used cars and buses, and had shops everywhere.

سلمى : وحياة المدينة كانت مختلفة. الناس كانوا يعيشون في مباني طويلة، ويستخدمون السيارات والحافلات، وتوجد متاجر في كل مكان.

Maha : Exactly. I realized every place had advantages and challenges.

مها : بالضبط. أدركت أن لكل مكان ميزاته وتحدياته.

Salma : Yes, the project helped us understand how people adapted to their environments.

سلمى : نعم، المشروع ساعدنا على فهم كيف يتكيف الناس مع بيئاتهم.

Read and write T (True) or F (False):



Student's
Book

1. Salma compared life in the city and the village. (.....)
2. People in the desert traveled on camels. (.....)
3. Villagers raised animals and farmed. (.....)
4. People in cities lived in small houses. (.....)
5. The project helped the students understand environments better (.....)

Exercises on Lesson 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A desert is a dry place with plants. There aren't many.
a) many b) few c) tall d) new
2. People in a village often animals.
a) raise b) drive c) paint d) close
3. The Nile river through Egypt.
a) jumps b) sleeps c) flows d) sings
4. A city has many tall
a) plants b) deserts c) tents d) buildings
5. They used wells water.
a) by b) for c) of d) in
6. An oasis is a green place in the desert where grow.
a) plants b) buses c) floors d) offices
7. Villagers usually all their neighbors.
a) break b) drive c) know d) close
8. People who live in the desert often to the weather.
a) climb b) adapt c) stop d) dry
9. Cities are usually from villages.
a) same b) small c) different d) inside
10. The teacher asked the students to between city life and village life.
a) compare b) share c) choose d) write

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

village - people - plants - Nile - buildings

This is a small village near a long river. Many ① live here. They grow ② and take care of animals. There are no tall ③ in this place. The ④ brings water to the farms and helps the people every day. Life is beautiful in this village.

Read the text and answer the questions:

Omar is my best friend. He lives in a small village near an oasis in the desert. There are few houses, and most people farm the land. Omar enjoys village life because he knows all his neighbors. Every morning, he helps his father water the plants. In the afternoon, Omar and his friends travel on a camel to visit another village. Omar thinks life in the desert is simple but amazing.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Omar lives near a/an
 river building shop oasis
- Omar travels with his friends on a
 camel bus bike boat

Answer the following questions:

- Why does Omar enjoy village life?

- What does Omar help his father with in the morning?

- How does Omar describe life in the desert?

Fill in the blanks using the words in the box:



river - city - environment - buildings - village - oasis

- A is a big place with many people, cars, and tall buildings.
- A is a small place with few people and many farms.
- A is a long line of water that moves to the sea.
- An is a green place with water in the desert.

5. are houses, schools, or offices where people live or work.
6. is everything around us, like air, water, plants, and animals.

Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. village - a - lives - quiet - in - **She**.
.....
2. many - has - **The** - city - tall - buildings.
.....
3. plants - morning - water - the - every - **They**.
.....
4. the - about - **What** - project - was - class?
..... ?
5. amazing - desert - **The** - is - an - place.
.....

Punctuate the following:

1. do you live in a city
.....
2. My family and i live in cairo
.....

Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"My Environment"

► village - people - plants



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



weather

طقس



sunny

مشمس



friendly

ودود



rainy

ممطر



cold

بارد



sunrise

شروق الشمس

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

visit (n.)

زيارة because

لأن / بسبب

travelers

مسافرون again

مرة أخرى

sellers

باعة forest

غابة

stories

قصص beside

بجانب

path

طريق / مسار near

بالقرب من

Adjectives

صفات

busy	مزدحم	quiet	هادئ
excited	متحمس	clear	صافي
fresh	طازج	colorful	ملون

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات و حروف جر

on holiday	في يوم العطلة	listen to	يستمع إلى
compare to	يقارن بـ	inside	داخل
learn to	يتعلم أن	buy from	يشترى من
take photos of	يلتقط صورًا لـ	in the afternoon	في فترة ما بعد الظهر
far from	بعيد عن	beside the river	بجانب النهر

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

visit	يزور	visited	smell	يشم	smelled
look like	يبدو كـ / يشبه	looked like	listen	يستمع	listened
notice	يلاحظ	noticed	watch	يشاهد	watched

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

see	يرى	saw	try	يحاول	tried
tell	يخبر	told	make	يصنع	made
find	يجد	found	wake up	يستيقظ	woke up
buy	يشترى	bought	go	يذهب	went



Read and learn



A Day in the Village

يوم في القرية

Last weekend, Ahmed and Omar visited a small village near the city. The weather was sunny. They were excited. They walked beside the river and noticed how clean and fresh the air was compared to the busy city. Omar took photos of houses, trees, and the clear water. Ahmed smelled the colorful flowers beside the path.

في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الماضي، زار أحمد وعمر قرية صغيرة بالقرب من المدينة. كان الطقس مشمسًا، وكانا متحمسين. مشيا بجانب النهر ولاحظا مدى نظافة ونقاء الهواء مقارنة بالمدينة المزدحمة. التقط عمر صورًا للمنازل والأشجار والمياه الصافية. شم أحمد الأزهار الملونة على جانب الطريق.

Not far from the village, they saw a small forest with tall trees and many birds. A farmer told them a story about an oasis in the desert where travelers could find water and rest.

وبالقرب من القرية، رأيا غابة صغيرة بها أشجار طويلة والكثير من الطيور. وحكى لهما مزارع قصة عن واحة في الصحراء حيث يمكن للمسافرين العثور على الماء والراحة.

In the afternoon, they went to the market and bought fresh fruit such as apples, oranges, and bananas. The sellers were friendly and told them stories about village life.

وفي فترة ما بعد الظهر، ذهبا إلى السوق واشترى فواكه طازجة مثل التفاح والبرتقال والموز. كان البائعون ودودين، وأخبروهما قصصًا عن حياة القرية.

Ahmed and Omar enjoyed the quiet streets, listened to birds singing, and learned many new things about the people who lived there.

استمتع أحمد وعمر بالشوارع الهادئة، واستمعا إلى تغريد الطيور، وتعلّما أشياء جديدة كثيرة عن الناس الذين يعيشون هناك.



Read again and answer:

A Circle the correct answer:

- Where did Ahmed and Omar go last weekend?
☐ To a big city ☐ To a small village ☐ To the desert
- What did Ahmed and Omar buy from the market?
☐ Toys and clothes ☐ Bread and cheese ☐ Fresh fruit
- What did the farmer tell them about?
☐ A river in the city ☐ An oasis in the desert
☐ A school in the village

B Answer the following questions:

- Why do you think Ahmed and Omar liked the village more than the city?

- How can we help keep the village and the river clean?

GRAMMAR STUDY



Simple الماضي البسيط

- The past simple tells us about actions that already happened.
 الزمن الماضي البسيط يخبرنا عن الأفعال التي حدثت بالفعل.
- We use the verb in the second form.
 نستخدم الفعل في التصريف الثاني (الفعل الماضي).

Regular Verbs

الأفعال المنتظمة

- Regular verbs: add (-d / -ed / -ied) to the base form:

في الأفعال المنتظمة: أضف (-d / -ed / -ied) إلى الفعل الأساسي:

Examples:

watch → watched

(يشاهد)

▶ We watched a movie last night.

شاهدنا فيلمًا الليلة الماضية.

love → loved

(يحب)

▶ I loved to watch cartoons when I was young.

كنتُ أحب مشاهدة الرسوم المتحركة عندما كنتُ صغيرًا.

study → studied

(يذاكر / يدرس)

▶ I studied the lesson before the exam.

ذاكرت الدرس قبل الامتحان.

Irregular Verbs**الأفعال غير المنتظمة****Irregular verbs have different forms in the past:**

يتغير شكل الأفعال غير المنتظمة في الماضي:

go → went

(يذهب)

▶ I went to the park yesterday.

ذهبتُ إلى الحديقة أمس.

do → did

(يفعل / يقوم)

▶ Mazen did his homework 2 days ago.

قام مازن بواجباته منذ يومان.

buy → bought

(يشترى)

▶ My brother bought a gift for his friend.

اشترى أخي هدية لصديقه.

Negative Form**النفي في الماضي****Form: did not (didn't) + base verb****Example:**

▶ I didn't watch TV yesterday.

لم أشاهد التلفاز أمس.

Question Form

صيغة السؤال في الماضي

● **Form:** **Did** + subject + base verb ?

Example:

▶ **Did** you **go** to the park last week?

هل ذهبت إلى الحديقة الأسبوع الماضي؟

➔ Yes, I **did**.

نعم، قمت بذلك.

➔ No, I **didn't**.

لا، لم أقم بذلك.

● **Form:** **What** + **did** + Subject + base verb ?

Example:

▶ Where **did** Ali **go** last Monday?

أين ذهب علي يوم الاثنين الماضي؟

Key Words

الكلمات الدالة

yesterday

أمس

when I was young

عندما كنت صغيراً

last (night/week/year)

الليلة الماضية / الأسبوع الماضي / السنة الماضية

in (2000)

في (عام 2000)

ago

منذ

a few days ago

منذ بضعة أيام



Tip!

The -ed Ending Has Three "Sounds"

Sound 1: /ɪd/

● After **t** or **d**.

نطق -ed مثل /ɪd/:

بعد الحرفين (**d** , **t**).

Examples:

▶ wanted → want + **id**

▶ needed → need + **id**

Sound 2: /t/

- After a **voiceless sound** like: **k, s, ch, sh, f, p.**

بعد صوتٍ مهموسٍ مثل: **k, s, ch, sh, f, p.**

Examples:

▶ helped → help + t ▶ looked → look + t

Sound 3: /d/

- After **voiced sounds (where your throat vibrates)**: **b, g, l, m, n, r, vowels...**

بعد الأصوات المجهورة (التي يهتز فيها الحلق) مثل: **b, g, l, m, n, r,** أو الحروف المتحركة.

Examples:

▶ called → call + d ▶ agree → agree + d

Correct the underlined words in each sentence:



Student's
Book

- We goes to the zoo last Sunday.
- She buyed a new bag yesterday.
- They didn't went to school.
- He doesn't eat meat yesterday.

Extra Practice on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Yesterday, my father a new car.
a) buys b) bought c) buy d) are buying
- Did you your cousin last weekend?
a) seeing b) saw c) see d) sees
- The cat on the roof last night.
a) sleeps b) slept c) sleep d) sleeping
- We a big cake for my friend's birthday.
a) make b) making c) makes d) made

5. Last week, Sara to the library.
 a) goes b) went c) go d) going
6. The students to the teacher's story carefully.
 a) listened b) listen c) listens d) listening
7. Where did you last week?
 a) went b) be c) go d) goes
8. My grandmother fresh bread this morning.
 a) baked b) bake c) bakes d) baking
9. The dog at the stranger yesterday.
 a) bark b) barked c) barks d) are barking
10. We didn't our homework before we went out to play.
 a) finish b) finished c) finishes d) finishing

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. They (not/walk) beside the river last Monday.
2. My mother didn't (makes) bread in the morning yesterday.
3. The travelers (rest not) in the small village.
4. What (does) Omar learn during his last trip?
5. The children (watches) the sunrise from the hill and they enjoyed it.
6. Why (do) they feel happy yesterday?
7. Last week, Salma (write) a letter to her cousin.
8. Ahmed (choose) the best apples from the basket yesterday.
9. The boys (play not) near the last week.
10. What (do) you eat for lunch yesterday?
11. Rania (wakes) up early and prepared her bag this morning.
12. Where (do) Ahmed and Omar go last weekend?

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ahmed and Omar visited a near the city. There are many animals there.
a) desert b) village c) city d) park
2. The weather is That's why I am wearing a T-shirt.
a) rainy b) cold c) sunny d) foggy
3. Ahmed smelled the flowers beside the path.
a) colorful b) heavy c) young d) strong
4. In the afternoon, they went to the to buy some fruits and vegetables.
a) forest b) market c) school d) park
5. The sellers were and told stories about village life.
a) friendly b) busy c) colorful d) quiet
6. Omar the colorful flowers in the village.
a) visited b) played c) went d) smelled
7. Ahmed to the village last weekend.
a) go b) went c) goes d) going
8. Omar many photos of the village.
a) take b) takes c) taken d) took
9. They didn't fresh fruit from the market.
a) buys b) bought c) buying d) buy
10. Did Ahmed the market in the afternoon?
a) visit b) visited c) visiting d) visits

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

sunny - flowers - river - birds - sellers

Ahmed and Omar visited a small village. They walked beside the **①** and noticed many **②** singing. Ahmed smelled the colorful **③** along the path. In the afternoon, they went to the market, where friendly **④** sold fresh fruit and told stories.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last Thursday, Rania and her brother Kareem went on a short trip to a small village near a forest. The weather was cool, and the sky looked clear. They followed a narrow path that led to a quiet river. Rania noticed colorful flowers beside the water, while Kareem watched birds flying above the trees. Later, they sat in a park and ate fresh fruit. Rania felt happy because the village was peaceful and different from the busy city.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The text is mainly about
 a) a noisy day in the city. b) a trip to a quiet village.
 c) playing games at school. d) visiting a big market.
- Kareem watched near the trees.
 a) birds flying. b) children playing.
 c) people selling fruit. d) flowers growing.

B Answer the following questions:

3. Why did Rania feel happy in the village?

▶

4. What did Rania notice beside the river?

▶

5. What was the weather like during their trip?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Ahmed (goes) to the village last Friday.
2. They (not/visit) the forest yesterday.
3. Omar (takes) many photos during the last trip.
4. We (not/see) any birds in the afternoon.
5. (Does) she buy fresh fruit from the market?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. weekend - visited - village - a - small - last - We.

2. flowers - smelled - Ahmed - path - the - along.

3. in - afternoon - bought - They - fruit - fresh - the.

4. sellers - friendly - were - The - and - told - stories.

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. did you enjoy the village
2. the market was busy

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"A Visit to the Village"



► river - flowers - market

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lesson 3

A Day at the Riverbank

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



riverbank

ضفة النهر



crops

محاصيل



fisherman

صياد



palm trees

أشجار النخيل



boat

قارب



sail

شراع / يُبحر

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

trip	رحلة	history	تاريخ
calm	هادئ	soon	قريبًا
excited	متحمس	mountain	جبل
cucumbers	خيار	net	شبكة
tired	مُتعب	boring	مُمل

Expressions and Prepositions

تعابير و حروف جر

tell stories	يروي قصصًا	go on a trip	يذهب في رحلة
go home	يذهب إلى المنزل	on the riverbank	على ضفة النهر

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات و حروف جر

go on a trip

يذهب في رحلة

under a tree

تحت شجرة

take a boat

يأخذ يركب / قاربًا

flying over

يطير فوق

for lunch

على الغداء

along the riverbank

على طول ضفة النهر

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

learn

يتعلم

learned

Present

Past

protect

يحمي

protected

climb

يتسلق

climbed

sail

يُبحر

sailed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

wake up

يستيقظ

woke up

Present

Past

feel

يشعر

felt

catch

يمسك / يصطاد

caught

keep

يحفظ

kept

wear

يرتدي

wore

tell

يُخبر

told

sit

يجلس

sat

show

يعرض

showed

Read and learn

A Day at the Riverbank

يوم على ضفة النهر

Last Friday, Youssef went on a trip with his grandfather to the Nile River. They woke up early and took a small **boat**. He helped his grandfather **sail**. The water in the river was calm. Youssef saw **fishermen** catching fish.



في يوم الجمعة الماضي، ذهب يوسف في رحلة مع جده إلى نهر النيل. استيقظا مبكرًا وركبا قاربًا صغيرًا. ساعد يوسف جده في الإبحار. كان الماء في النهر هادئًا. رأى يوسف الصيادين وهم يصطادون الأسماك.

His grandfather showed him the green farms near the river where farmers plant **crops**, vegetables, and fruits. They also saw tall **palm trees** and children playing on the **riverbank**. Youssef wore his hat because the sun was hot. They sat under a tree and ate bread, cheese, and cucumbers. His grandfather told him stories about the history of the Nile. Youssef was very happy because he learned many new things. At the end of the day, they went home together, feeling tired but excited to visit the Nile again soon.

وأراه جده المزارع الخضراء القريبة من النهر حيث يزرع الفلاحون المحاصيل والخضروات والفواكه. كما رأوا أشجار النخيل الطويلة والأطفال يلعبون على ضفة النهر. ارتدى يوسف قبعته لأن الشمس كانت حارة. جلسا تحت شجرة وأكلا الخبز والجبن والخيار. قصَّ عليه جده قصصًا عن تاريخ النيل. شعر يوسف بسعادة كبيرة لأنه تعلم أشياء جديدة كثيرة. في نهاية اليوم، عادوا إلى المنزل معًا، وهم يشعرون بالتعب لكن متحمسون لزيارة النيل مرة أخرى قريبًا.

Write (T) True or (F) False:



Student's
Book

1. Youssef went to the Nile River with his grandfather. (.....)
2. Youssef and his grandfather ate pizza for lunch. (.....)
3. Birds were flying over the water. (.....)
4. Youssef said the trip was boring. (.....)

Pronunciation



Silent Letters (k, l)

- **Silent k:** The letter "k" is not pronounced when it comes before "n" at the beginning of a word.

الحرف k الصامت: لا يُنطق حرف "k" عندما يأتي قبل حرف "n" في بداية الكلمة.

Examples:

Silent Letters "k"



knee

ركبة



know

يعرف



knock

يطرق



knife

سكين

- **Silent l:** The letter "l" is not pronounced in some words, especially after "a" or "o".

الحرف l الصامت: لا يُنطق حرف "l" في بعض الكلمات، خاصة بعد حرفي "a" أو "o".

Examples:

Silent Letters "l"



half

نصف



folk

ناس / شعب



walk

يمشي



talk

يتحدث

Read and circle the words with silent letters:

1. Please knock before you come in.
2. I feel calm near the river.
3. Do you know my friend?
4. He hurt his knee on the mountain yesterday.
5. He walked at night in the city

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The fisherman used a to catch fish.
a) net b) sail c) boat d) bread
2. Many farmers grow near the river.
a) houses b) mountains c) kites d) crops
3. The children were because they saw colorful palm trees.
a) boring b) tired c) excited d) calm
4. At the end of the day, the fisherman returned to the
a) trip b) riverbank c) kite d) mountain
5. The grandfather told the children stories about the of the Nile.
a) again b) soon c) history d) vegetables
6. They walked the riverbank and saw green farms.
a) under b) along c) above d) in
7. There were many growing near the river.
a) crops b) mountains c) kites d) houses
8. The teacher us a story about animals yesterday.
a) tell b) told c) tells d) telling
9. My brother a new bike for his birthday last week.
a) buys b) buying c) buy d) bought
10. Did you the birds singing this morning?
a) sees b) saw c) see d) seeing

11. I didn't my homework before dinner yesterday.
 a) finish b) finished c) finishes d) finishing
12. the cat sleep under the tree when it rained?
 a) Is b) Does c) Do d) Did



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



fisherman - palm trees - boat - sail - riverbank

1. Youssef and his grandfather took a small on the Nile.
2. A was catching fish with his net.
3. They walked along the and enjoyed the view.
4. Youssef learned how to with his grandfather.
5. There were tall near the water.



Read the text and answer the questions:

Last Sunday, Sara and her brother Karim went on a trip to the riverbank near their village. The weather was calm and sunny. They saw green farms and tall palm trees along the river. A fisherman was using a net to catch fish, while children were flying kites nearby. Sara and Karim bought fresh bread, cheese, and cucumbers from a small market. At the end of the day, their grandfather told them stories about the history of the village.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about
 a) a visit to the city b) a trip to the riverbank
 c) a school project d) buying clothes
2. They saw green and tall palm trees along the river
 a) lands b) farms c) rivers d) valleys



Answer the following questions:

3. What did Sara and Karim buy from the market?

4. What did their grandfather do at the end of the day?
5. When did the children go on the trip?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Last Saturday, Omar (help) his father in the garden.
2. We (not/go) to the park because it rained.
3. Salma didn't (found) a small bird near the river.
4. What (do) Lina and Rania eat for breakfast last Friday?
5. The children (watch) the sunrise from the hill.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. palm trees - river - near - are - There - the.

▶

2. took - a boat - We - the - on - Nile.

▶

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. where did Youssef go with his grandfather ▶
2. birds were flying over the water ▶

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"A Day at the Riverbank"

▶ riverbank - sail - boat

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



fields

حقول



stream

جدول مائي / نهر صغير



peaceful

هادئ / مسالم



paths

مسارات / طرق



distance

مسافة



relaxed

مسترخي

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

dear

عزيز / عزيزتي

checklist

قائمة التحقق

gently

بلطف

truly

حقًا

friendly

ودود

introduction

المقدمة

greeting

التحية

clearly

بوضوح

signature

التوقيع

closing

الخاتمة

view

منظر / رؤية

politely

بلطف / بأدب

although

على الرغم من

details

تفاصيل

headings

عناوين

body

المحتوى / جسم الرسالة

action words

كلمات الأفعال

environments

بيئات

feeling words

كلمات المشاعر

time words

كلمات الزمن

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات و حروف جر

during the holiday	خلال العطلة	Good job!	عمل جيد!
Excellent!	ممتاز!	Well done!	أحسن!
Please speak louder.	من فضلك تكلم بصوت أعلى.	Work a little harder.	اعمل بجهد أكبر قليلاً.
tell about	يخبر عن / يتحدث عن	I hope you are doing well.	أمل أن تكون بخير.
walk on	يمشي على	far from	بعيد عن
at night	في الليل	flow between	يتدفق بين
on Friday	في يوم الجمعة	on that day	في ذلك اليوم

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

hope	يأمل / يتمنى	hoped	wish	يتمنى	wished
flow	يتدفق	flowed	end	ينتهي / نهاية	ended
stop	يتوقف / يوقف	stopped	start	يبدأ	started
share	يشارك	shared	pack	يعد	packed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

say	يقول	said	understand	يفهم	understood
write	يكتب	wrote	speak	يتحدث	spoke

Read and learn



Dear Lina,

I hope you are doing well. I want to tell you more about my trip to the mountains last weekend. On that day, the weather was cold, but the view was so beautiful. I saw tall green trees, wide fields, and a big stream flowing gently between the rocks. The sound of the water made the place feel peaceful. We walked on small paths and stopped to take photos of the birds that were singing in the distance. Although we were far from the city, I felt happy and relaxed. At night, we sat near the mountains, and shared stories. I ate some delicious fruits that my mother packed. It was truly a wonderful trip, and I wished you were with me.



Your friend,

Sara

عزيزتي لينا،

أمل أن تكوني بخير. أريد أن أخبرك المزيد عن رحلتي إلى الجبال الأسبوع الماضي. في ذلك اليوم كان الطقس باردًا، لكن المنظر كان جميلًا جدًا. رأيت أشجارًا خضراء طويلة، وحقولًا واسعة، وجدولًا مائيًا كبيرًا يتدفق بلطف بين الصخور. كان صوت الماء يجعل المكان مليءً بالسلام. مشينا على مسارات صغيرة وتوقفنا لالتقاط صور للطيور التي كانت تغرد عن في البعد. وعلى الرغم من أننا كنا بعيدين عن المدينة، شعرت بالسعادة والراحة. في الليل، جلسنا بالقرب من الجبال وتشاركنا القصص. أكلت بعض الفواكه اللذيذة التي أعدتها لي أُمي. لقد كانت رحلة رائعة حقًا، وتمنيت لو كنت معي.

صديقتك،

سارة



Read and complete the friendly letter using the words in the box:

Dear - Write back soon - Your friend - trip - trees

..... Omar,
I want to tell you about my to the oasis. It was very exciting!
I saw tall, and clear water. The oasis was quiet and peaceful, but it was also fun to see so many new things. I hope we can go together one day.

.....!

.....,

.....



Language Notes:

Friendly letter writing checklist

قائمة التحقق لكتابة رسالة ودية:

① Greeting التحية

Start with Dear + name

ابدأ بـ "عزيزي/عزيزتي" + الاسم.

② Introduction المقدمة

Say why you are writing

اذكر سبب كتابتك للرسالة.

③ Body المحتوى

Share details or stories

شارك التفاصيل أو القصص.

④ Closing الخاتمة

End politely

اختتم الرسالة بأدب.

⑤ Signature التوقيع

Write your name

اكتب اسمك.



Write a friendly letter about a trip to the village. Write about (30-24) words. Use the checklist

- Greeting: Dear
- Introduction: Reason for writing
- Body: Details - What happened? Who was there?
- Closing:
- Signature:

A Presentation

عرض تقديمي

Prepare a presentation about what you like in the place where you live

حضّر عرضًا تقديميًا عن الأشياء التي تحبها في المكان الذي تعيش فيه.

Make sure to... تأكد من الآتي:

① Use clear headings

استخدم عناوين واضحة

② Add pictures of the different types of environments

أضف صورًا لأنواع مختلفة من البيئات.

③ Keep the text simple

اجعل النص بسيطًا

④ Speak for 3-5 minutes

تحدث لمدة 3-5 دقائق

⑤ Speak clearly and slowly so your friends can understand you

تحدث بوضوح وببطء حتى يتمكن أصدقاؤك من فهمك

⑥ Say, "Today I will talk about different types of environments."

قل: "اليوم سأحدث عن أنواع مختلفة من البيئات."

Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. They shared near the mountains at night about life in the past.
 a) letters b) kites c) fruits d) stories
2. The fields, trees, and stream made the place feel very
 a) peaceful b) cold c) boring d) dark
3. A small flowed gently between the rocks.
 a) city b) road c) stream d) mountain
4. We walked on narrow to reach the top of the hill.
 a) streets b) paths c) rivers d) trees
5. I some fruits for our trip, including apples and bananas.
 a) baked b) packed c) viewed d) watched
6. I wanted to take more of the mountains before leaving.
 a) pictures b) bread c) stones d) cities
7. We enjoyed the quiet evening and the peaceful around us.
 a) rock b) city c) environment d) bread
8. The view from the hill was so
 a) narrow b) loud c) boring d) beautiful
9. The children walked so they wouldn't step on the flowers.
 a) slowly b) roughly c) loudly d) angrily
10. During their trip in the desert, the travelers finally found a/an where they could rest and get water.
 a) mountain b) oasis c) city d) river

2

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

oasis - friend - trip - palm trees - wonderful

Dear Nada, I am so happy to write to you. I would like to tell you about my ① to the oasis. It was ②! I saw tall ③, and clean water for drinking. The ④ was calm and peaceful, but it was also fun to see so many new things. I hope we can go together one day.

3

Read the text and answer the questions:

Last summer, Amal and her family went on a trip to the desert. They walked for hours under the hot sun until they reached a small oasis. The oasis had tall palm trees, fresh water, and green plants all around. Amal drank water from the well and watched birds flying over the trees. Her father told her stories about travelers who used the oasis long ago. Amal enjoyed the oasis because it's a peaceful place and wished she could stay longer.

A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Amal and her family walked in the
a) city b) forest c) desert d) mountain
- The oasis had
a) palm trees and green plants b) buildings and shops
c) rivers and roads d) cars and buses

B

Answer the following questions:

- Why did Amal enjoy the oasis?
▶
- What did Amal's father tell her at the oasis?
▶
- Summarize the text in one sentence.
▶

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. They (walk) to the park last week.
2. Our teacher (give) us homework a few days ago.
3. Mom (buy) apples from the market yesterday.
4. My sister (study) her lesson yesterday.
5. My parents (move) to Cairo in 1998.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. you - Did - yesterday - the riverbank - walk - along?
▶
2. What - see - did - you - on - trip - the?
▶
3. enjoyed - the - view - the mountains - from - We.
▶
4. bought - My mom - fruit - the - market - from.
▶

6 Punctuate the following:

1. birds were flying over the water ▶
2. how can we help protect the Nile River ▶

7 Write a friendly letter about a trip to the village. Use the guiding words:



▶ weather - trees - birds

▶

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 1

Main Vocabulary

environment	بيئة	rainy	ممطر
desert	صحراء	cold	بارد
building	مبنى	sunrise	شروق الشمس
well	بئر	riverbank	ضفة النهر
city	مدينة	crops	محاصيل
village	قرية	fisherman	صياد
oasis	واحة	palm trees	أشجار النخيل
river	نهر	boat	قارب
weather	طقس	sail	شراع / يبحر
sunny	مشمس	fields	حقول
friendly	ودود	stream	جدول مائي / نهر صغير
distance	مسافة	peaceful	هادئ / مسالم
relaxed	مسترخي	paths	مسارات / طرق

Pronunciation



Examples:



knock
يطرق



knife
سكين

Silent k



knee
ركبة



know
يعرف



walk
يمشي



talk
يتحدث

Silent l



half
نصف



folk
ناس / شعب

Grammar Study



Past Simple

We use it to talk about actions that happened and finished in the past.

Form: We add the second form (the past) of the verb.

▶ I visited Paris last year.

Negative: did not + base verb

▶ She didn't like the movie.

Question: Did + subject + base verb?

▶ Did they play football yesterday?



Dictation:

fisherman	أشجار النخيل
village	نهر
crops	مسترخي
desert	ضفة النهر
city	مشمس
well	قارب
weather	بارد
distance	ودود
oasis	شراع / يبحر
environment	مسارات / طرق
rainy	حقول
peaceful	شروق الشمس
building	جدول مائي / نهر صغير
city life	مكتب
land	طوابق
project	جمل
shop	بالضبط

Writing Skills Unit 1

My Environment

My environment is a peaceful village surrounded by tall trees and colorful plants. The people are friendly and always help each other. Children play near the gardens every morning. Nature makes the village peaceful and beautiful.

A Visit to the Village

During my visit to the village, I walked along the calm river. The fields were full of bright flowers, and the market was busy. Sellers sold fruits, vegetables, and many other things. The view was both calming and exciting.

A Day at the Riverbank

I spent a wonderful day at the riverbank, watching small boats sail across the water. Children played and laughed near the river. Everyone enjoyed the cool air and peaceful sounds.

A Friendly letter about a trip to the village

Dear Maya,

I want to tell you about my trip the village! The weather was sunny and warm. I saw many tall trees. I heard the sweet sounds of little birds singing. It was a peaceful trip!

Love, Amira

A trip to the Mountains

While exploring the mountain, I walked through green fields and crossed small streams. A tiny boat floated on a clear lake nearby. Birds sang above, adding music to the adventure. The view made me feel happy and free.

A Day in the Village

Our trip to the village was memorable. The weather was sunny. The people were very kind and friendly. I was so excited to see the fields and all the farm animals. It was a nice trip

Test 1 on Unit 1

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

Total

40

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:



(6Ms)

1. Ahmed lives in a small village near the (Nile River - forest - sea).
2. Every morning, Ahmed helps his grandfather on the (wide - green - small) farms.
3. Sometimes, Ahmed travels on a (camel - bus - bicycle) to visit nearby villages.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (4Ms)

friendly - nice - weather - photos

Ahmed: Last weekend was wonderful, Omar! I loved the small village.

Omar: Me too! It was a ① day, and the air was cleaner than in the city.

Ahmed: Yes! The ② was very nice.

Omar: I took many ③ of the houses and trees!

Ahmed: Great! I also like the people we met.

Omar: Yes! they were ④

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. A small place with few people and many farms is called a (city - village - desert - riverbank).
2. My uncle lives in a/an (oasis - shop - office - building). It is a green place with water in the desert.
3. They (raise - raised - raising - raises) animals for a living before they moved to the city.
4. They (didn't - don't - doesn't - aren't) live in Aswan in the past.

Term 2

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

(8Ms)

1. Did you went to the zoo last week? (.....)
2. Last night, we watches a movie together. (.....)
3. My sister buyed a new book yesterday. (.....)
4. Do they play football in the park last week? (.....)

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

(10Ms)

Last Friday, our class went on a trip to the mountains. We walked along peaceful paths and saw small streams, rocks, and colorful flowers. Some children climbed the hills, while others sat under big trees and watched birds flying over. Our teacher told us interesting stories about the history of the mountains and the plants and animals that live there. Everyone felt excited, happy, and relaxed during the trip.

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The children only climbed hills and did not sit under trees. (.....)
2. Everyone felt bored and tired during the trip. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

3. They went on a trip to the (boats - mountains - oasis - park).
4. They walked along (dangerous - wide - peaceful - long) paths.
5. The teacher told them (interesting - boring - tired - sleepy) stories.

6 Write a short paragraph of (4) sentences using the following guiding words:

(8Ms)

"A trip to the Mountains"

▶ green fields - streams - boat



.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 2 on Unit 1

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

Total

30



(2Ms)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Ali and Mohammed visited a small village last weekend. (.....)
2. The weather was rainy and cold. (.....)
3. They saw colorful flowers and a small forest with birds. (.....)
4. The sellers at the market were unfriendly. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3Ms)

1. The caught fish early in the morning.
a) teacher b) fisherman c) driver d) farmer
2. We stayed indoors because it was all day.
a) colorful b) early c) rainy d) late
3. Reading his favorite book made Ahmed feel
a) relaxed b) nervous c) hungry d) sleepy
4. Yesterday, I a movie with my friends.
a) watch b) watched c) watching d) watches
5. Did you your homework yesterday?
a) do b) did c) doing d) does
6. Last night, we pizza for dinner.
a) eat b) eats c) eating d) ate

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

food - fields - environment - village - well

Ahmed visited a small village by the river. The weather was peaceful, with green ① and tall trees. People in the village grew ②, raised animals, and got water from a ③ Ahmed enjoyed walking around, listening to birds, and learning about how the villagers cared for their ④

Term 2

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

(8Ms)

Last weekend, Ahmed and Omar visited a small village near the city. The weather was sunny, the air was fresh. They walked beside the river, saw colorful flowers, and a small forest with tall trees, and many birds. A farmer told them about an oasis in the desert. In the afternoon, they went to the market, bought fresh fruit, and played with other boys. They enjoyed the quiet streets and learned about village life.

A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Last weekend, Ahmed and Omar visited a small
 a) forest b) village c) river d) market
2. In the afternoon, they went to the market, bought fresh fruit, and with other boys
 a) sang b) played c) cooked d) walked

B

Answer the following questions:

3. What was the weather like?
 ▶
4. What did the boys see beside the river?
 ▶
5. Who told Ahmed and Omar a story about an oasis in the desert?
 ▶

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

1. Yesterday, I (watch) a movie with my friends.
2. Last week, Sara (study) for her English test.

3. Two days ago, we (clean) the classroom.

4. Yesterday, he (do) his homework after school.

6 Punctuate the following:

(4Ms)

1. did you finish your homework

2. ali and sara played together.

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

(8Ms)

"A Day in the Village"

► sunny - friendly - excited

Term 2



Unit 2

Our World, Our Responsibility

عَالَمُنَا، مَسْئُولِيَّتُنَا

Learning Outcomes

Speaking

- Talk about ways to protect the planet using simple sentences
- Use conjunctions correctly in short spoken sentences
- Pronounce r-controlled words correctly in speech

Reading

- Read short texts and dialogs about going green and understand the main ideas
- Recognize vocabulary related to environmental actions
- Identify r-controlled words in texts
- Recognize and understand the use of conjunctions in sentences
- Read sample emails and identify the greeting, body, and closing

Listening

- Listen carefully to texts and dialogs about how to go green and protect the planet
- Identify key details such as actions, reasons, and effects related to protecting the environment
- Recognize and understand r-controlled words in spoken sentences
- Identify the use of conjunctions in short dialogs or instructions

Writing

- Write short sentences or paragraphs about ways to protect the environment
- Use r-controlled words correctly in sentences
- Write sentences using correct conjunctions
- Write a simple email including a greeting, a few sentences about a topic, and a closing, create a brochure about going green

Lesson 1

A Guide to Protecting Our Planet

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



recycle

يُعيد تدوير



reduce

يُقلِّل



reuse

يُعيد استخدام



planet

كوكب



apply

يطبِّق



guide

دليل

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

amount	كمية	metal	معدن
project	مشروع	situation	موقف
bottles	زجاجات / قوارير	less	أقل
ideas	أفكار	refilling	إعادة تعبئة
materials	مواد	quickly	بسرعة
electricity	كهرباء	clothes	ملابس
nature	الطبيعة	items	عناصر / أشياء
paper	ورق	pages	صفحات

Unit 2

Adjectives

صفات

important	مهم	empty	فارغ
clean	نظيف	old	قديم
main	رئيسي	new	جديد

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات و حروف جر

keep it clean and safe	اجعله نظيفًا وآمنًا	for example	على سبيل المثال
what about	ماذا عن	throw away	يرمي / يتخلص من
avoid waste	يتجنب الهدر / يتجنب إضاعة الأشياء	at home / school	في المنزل / في المدرسة
do homework	يؤدي الواجب المنزلي	care for	يعتني بـ / يهتم بـ
take care of	يعتني بـ	turn into	يتحول إلى
stand for	يرمز إلى	talk about	يتحدث عن
instead of	بدلاً من	at the end	في نهاية

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
save	يُنقذ / يُوفر	saved		use	يستخدم	used	
protect	يحمي	protected		remember	يتذكر	remembered	
waste	يهدر / يضيّع	wasted		apply	يطبق	applied	
avoid	يتجنب	avoided		finish	ينهي	finished	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
throw	يرمي	threw		buy	يشترى	bought	
know	يعرف	knew		forget	ينسى	forgot	
mean	يعني	meant		write	يكتب	wrote	
learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt		bring	يُحضِر	brought	

Definitions تعريفات

our planet	the place where we all live
reduce	using less of something, like water or electricity, to avoid waste
reuse	using something again instead of throwing it away
recycle	turning old materials into new things, like paper, plastic, or metal
apply	to use something you know in a situation

Listen and read

Caring for Our Planet

العناية بكونبنا



Teacher : Good morning, class! Today we'll talk about how to keep our planet clean using the 3Rs.

المعلمة: صباح الخير يا صف! اليوم سنتحدث عن كيفية الحفاظ على نظافة كونبنا باستخدام القواعد الثلاث "R".

Students : What are the 3Rs, Miss?

الطلاب: ما هي القواعد الثلاث "R"، يا معلمة؟

Teacher : They stand for **Reduce, Reuse, and Recycle**.

المعلّمة: هي اختصار لـ تقليل (Reduce)، إعادة استخدام (Reuse)، وإعادة تدوير (Recycle).

Salim : What does Reduce mean?

سالم: ماذا يعني "تقليل"؟

Teacher : It means using less. For example, don't waste water or electricity.

المعلّمة: يعني استخدام أقل. على سبيل المثال، لا تهدر الماء أو الكهرباء.

Farouk : And Reuse?

فاروق: وماذا عن "إعادة الاستخدام"؟

Teacher : It means using things again—like refilling a bottle instead of throwing it away.

المعلّمة: يعني استخدام الأشياء مرة أخرى - مثل إعادة ملء الزجاجاة بدلاً من رميها.

Omar : What about "Recycle"?

عمر: وماذا عن "إعادة التدوير"؟

Teacher : That's when we turn old things into new ones, like paper or plastic. Remember, class, you should **apply** what you learned today at school and at home to keep our **planet** clean!

المعلّمة: هذا عندما نحول الأشياء القديمة إلى أشياء جديدة، مثل الورق أو البلاستيك. تذكروا يا صف، يجب عليكم تطبيق ما تعلمتموه اليوم في المدرسة وفي المنزل للحفاظ على نظافة كوكبنا!

Students : We will, Miss

الطلاب: سنفعل، يا معلمة.



Write (T) true or (F) false:

1. The 3Rs stand for Reduce, Reuse, and Recycle. ()
2. Reduce means using more water and electricity. ()
3. Reuse means using things again instead of throwing them away. ()
4. Recycle means turning old things into new ones. ()
5. The teacher told the students to only use the 3Rs at home. ()

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Reuse means using something instead of throwing it away.
a) new b) again c) fast d) heavy
2. Reduce means using of something, like water or electricity.
a) more b) empty c) tall d) less
3. Recycle is when we turn old materials into things.
a) new b) clean c) heavy d) small
4. Plastic, paper, and metal can be
a) replayed b) recycled c) avoided d) finished
5. We must avoid waste to keep our planet
a) dirty b) tall c) clean d) empty
6. Refilling bottles instead of throwing them away is a way to
a) reduce b) redo c) apply d) reuse
7. Students need to what they learned to protect the planet.
a) apply b) forget c) waste d) avoid
8. We should animals and plants to keep nature safe.
a) waste b) protect c) throw d) forget
9. We should not plastic or paper carelessly because it harms nature.
a) throw away b) apply c) use d) refill
10. We must avoid waste to keep our planet
a) dirty b) tall c) clean d) empty

2

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

recycle - apply - guide - safe - protect

Today we had a very important lesson. We learned how to keep our planet ① We should use water and electricity less. We can ② bottles and bags instead of throwing them away. We can also reuse old paper and plastic. Remember to ③ what you learned at school and at home. We have to work together to ④ nature.

3

Read the text and answer the questions:

Today, the class learned how to keep the planet clean using the 3Rs: **Reduce**, Reuse, and Recycle. Reduce means using less of something, like water or electricity, to avoid waste. Reuse means using things again, for example, refilling a bottle instead of throwing it away. Recycle is when old materials, like paper, plastic, and metal, are turned into new things. Students are encouraged to apply what they learned both at school and at home to protect the planet and keep it clean.

A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The 3Rs stand for
 a) reduce, reuse, recycle b) read, write, rest
 c) run, ride, relax d) refill, remove, reuse
- Refilling a bottle instead of throwing it away is an example of
 a) reduce b) reuse c) recycle d) apply

B

Answer the following questions:

- What does '**Reduce**' mean?

▶

4. Why should students apply what they learned at school and at home?

▶

5. Give a suitable title for the text.

▶

4 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. planet - We - care - should - our - for.

▶

2. recycling - you - What - know - do - about?

▶ ?

5 Punctuate the following:

1. what does reuse and recycle mean

▶

2. we should apply what we learn

▶

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"Caring for Our Planet"

▶ reduce - recycle - planet

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



pollution

التلوث



tote bags

حقائب قماش / حقائب قابلة لإعادة الاستخدام



bin

سلة المهملات



surroundings

البيئة المحيطة



litter

النفايات / القمامة الملقاة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

both

كلا

sea animals

حيوانات بحرية

sides

جانبيين

cloth bags

حقائب قماش

ground

أرض

neighborhood

حي

Adjectives

صفات

healthy

صحي

great

عظيم/رائع

sick

مريض

safe

آمن

Expressions and Prepositions

تعابير و حروف جر

share rides

يشارك الركوب / يتقاسم المشاوير

get angry

يغضب

reduce pollution

يقلل التلوث

Let's Go Green!

هيا نحافظ على البيئة! فلنصبح صديقين للبيئة!

work together

يعملون معًا

write on both sides

يكتب على كلا الجانبين

play outside

يلعبون في الخارج

on the ground

على الأرض

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
harm	يضرّ	harmed		rain	يمطر	rained	
study	يدرس	studied		shout	يصرخ	shouted	
fail	يفشل	failed		watch	يشاهد	watched	
share	يتشارك	shared		reduce	يُقلل	reduced	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
read	يقرأ	read		get	يحصل على	got	
sleep	ينام	slept		take	يأخذ	took	
keep	يحفظ	kept		ride	يركب	rode	
send	يُرسل	sent		throw	يرمي	threw	



Read and learn



Let's Go Green! هيا نحافظ على البيئة!



We can all help keep our planet clean and healthy. One way to go green is to use less paper. We can write on both sides of the page and send emails instead of paper letters. To reduce pollution, we can walk, ride a bike, or share rides with others instead of using many cars. It's also a great idea to use tote bags instead of plastic ones when shopping because plastic harms sea animals and nature. We should always throw litter in the bin and remind others to keep our surroundings clean. When we all work together, we help our planet stay clean, safe, and green for everyone to enjoy.

يمكننا جميعًا أن نساعد في الحفاظ على كوكبنا نظيفًا وصحيًا. إحدى طرق حماية البيئة هي استخدام كمية أقل من الورق. يمكننا الكتابة على كلا جانبي الصفحة وإرسال رسائل إلكترونية بدلاً من الرسائل الورقية. ولتقليل التلوث، يمكننا المشي أو ركوب الدراجة أو مشاركة الركوب مع الآخرين بدلاً من استخدام الكثير من السيارات. كما أنه من الرائع استخدام حقائب القماش بدلاً من الأكياس البلاستيكية عند التسوق لأن البلاستيك يضر الحيوانات البحرية والطبيعة. ويجب علينا دائمًا رمي القمامة في سلة المهملات وتذكير الآخرين بالحفاظ على نظافة البيئة من حولنا. عندما نعمل جميعًا معًا، نساعد كوكبنا على البقاء نظيفًا وآمنًا وأخضر ليستمتع به الجميع.

Write (T) true or (F) false:



Student's Book

1. We can help our planet by keeping it clean and healthy. ()
2. We should use less paper and send emails instead of paper letters. ()
3. Using cloth bags is better than using plastic ones. ()
4. Plastic harms sea animals and nature. ()
5. We should throw litter on the ground to keep the streets clean. ()

GRAMMAR STUDY



Conjunctions أدوات الربط

● Conjunctions are words that join parts of a sentence together, helping ideas flow smoothly.

أدوات الربط هي كلمات تصل أجزاء الجملة ببعضها، مما يساعد الأفكار على الانسياب بسلاسة.

● "nor" adds a second negative idea: تُضيف فكرة سلبية ثانية:

Examples:

▶ We don't burn plastic, **nor** do we throw it on the ground.

لا نحرق البلاستيك، ولا نرميه على الأرض.

▶ We don't waste water, **nor** do we leave the tap running.

نحن لا نهدر الماء، ولا نترك الصنبور مفتوحًا.

● "so" shows a result:

تُبين النتيجة:

Examples:

▶ We sort the waste, **so** our neighborhood stays clean.

نفرز النفايات، لذا يبقى حيّنا نظيفًا.

▶ She turned off the lights, **so** the room became dark.

أطفأت الأنوار، لذا أصبحت الغرفة مظلمة.

● "because" shows a reason or cause:

تُظهر السبب أو العلة:

Examples:

▶ We recycle paper **because** it helps save trees.

نعيد تدوير الورق لأنه يساعد في إنقاذ الأشجار.

▶ He wears a hat **because** the sun is very strong today.

هو يرتدي قبعة لأن الشمس قوية جدًا اليوم.



Tip!

- “and” adds an additional idea:

تضيف فكرة إضافية:

Example:

▶ I like apples **and** oranges.

أنا أحب التفاح والبرتقال.

- “but” shows a contrast:

تُظهر التباين أو المعارضة:

Example:

▶ I wanted to play outside, **but** it started raining.

كنت أريد اللعب في الخارج، لكن بدأ المطر.

- “or” shows a choice or alternative:

تُظهر الاختيار أو البديل:

Example:

▶ You can walk **or** take the bus to school.

يمكنك المشي أو أخذ الحافلة إلى المدرسة.

Fill in the blanks using the words in the box:



Student's
Book

because - or - so - and - nor

1. She bought apples oranges from the market.
2. He stayed home he was not feeling well.
3. You can read a book watch TV before bed.
4. We were tired, we went to sleep early.
5. The teacher didn't shout, did she get angry.

Extra Practice on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I wanted to play outside, it was raining.
 a) or b) because c) but d) so
2. We stayed at home it was too hot to go out.
 a) and b) because c) so d) nor

3. She didn't study, she failed the test.
a) so b) or c) nor d) but
4. You can have pizza pasta for lunch.
a) because b) or c) but d) nor
5. He doesn't like apples, does he like bananas.
a) or b) nor c) so d) but
6. We sort the waste, our neighborhood stays clean.
a) because b) so c) nor d) or
7. We don't throw trash on the ground, do we burn it.
a) so b) or c) nor d) but
8. She turned off the lights, the room became dark.
a) because b) so c) and d) or
9. He studies hard, he can pass the exam.
a) because b) so c) nor d) and
10. You can watch a movie read a book this evening.
a) or b) and c) but d) nor

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. One way to go green is to use less
a) paper b) bin c) litter d) pollution
2. We can write on sides of the page to save paper.
a) one b) both c) empty d) few
3. We should always throw litter in the
a) bin b) ground c) sea d) notebook
4. Walking, riding a bike, or sharing rides helps to
a) reduce pollution b) throw litter c) read books d) sleep
5. Using tote bags is great because it helps the environment.
a) protect b) harm c) waste d) forget
6. She is kind smart.
a) because b) but c) so d) and

7. I didn't call him, did I send a message.
 a) or b) nor c) and d) so
8. He missed the bus, he walked to school.
 a) and b) because c) but d) so
9. We need to save water the plants need it.
 a) because b) but c) nor d) so
10. I like tea, I don't like coffee.
 a) and b) but c) or d) nor

2

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

bin - tote bags - surroundings - sides - reduce

We can all help reduce pollution. One way is to use ① instead of plastic bags. We should throw litter in the bin. Writing on both ② of the paper saves resources. Walking or ride a bike helps ③ car pollution. We must remind people to keep our ④ clean.

3

Read the text and answer the questions:

We can all help protect our planet and keep it healthy. One way to go green is to use less paper. We can write on both sides of the page and send emails instead of paper letters. To reduce pollution, we can walk, ride a bike, or share rides with friends instead of using many cars. Using tote bags instead of plastic ones because plastic harms sea animals and nature. We should always put litter in the bin and remind people to keep their surroundings clean.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Writing on both sides of the page helps to
 a) waste paper b) save paper c) throw litter d) harm animals
2. Plastic bags harm
 a) shops b) sea animals c) books d) notebooks

B Answer the following questions:

3. How can we use less paper at school?
4. Why is it better to use tote bags instead of plastic bags?
5. What are some ways to reduce pollution from cars?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. I wanted to go out, (so) it started raining.
2. We stayed at home (and) it was rainy outside.
3. We turned off the lights, (because) we couldn't see anything.
4. We don't throw trash on the ground, (or) do we burn it.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. a - helps - bike - reduce - Riding - pollution.

▶

2. go - means - green - What - think - do - you?

▶ ?

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. plastic harms sea animals and nature

▶

2. what can you do with it

▶

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"Go Green"

▶ tote bags - ride a bike - surroundings

.....

.....

.....

.....



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



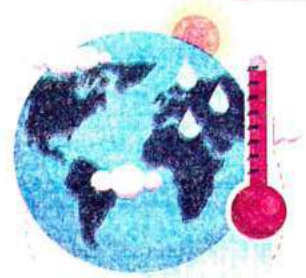
resources

موارد



run out

ينفذ / ينقطع



warm

دافئ



earth

الأرض



gas

الغاز (غاز طبيعي)



electricity

الكهرباء

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

wisely

بحكمة

garden

حديقة

tap

منبوع

unlimited

غير محدود

difference

فرق / اختلاف

brighter

أكثر إشراقاً

classmates

زملاء الصف

runner

عداء

carefully

بعناية

fur

فراء

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات و حروف جر

make a big difference	يُحدث فرقًا كبيرًا	come from	يأتي من
save resources	يحافظ على الموارد	leave the lights on	يترك الأنوار مضاءة
leave the tap running	يترك الصنبور مفتوحًا	switching off lights	إطفاء الأنوار
turning off the tap	إغلاق الصنبور	on the floor	على الأرض

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
brush يغسل بفرشاة	brushed	heat يسخن	heated
remind يذكر	reminded	ignore يتجاهل	ignored
pour يصب / يسكب	poured	happen يحدث	happened

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
give يعطي	gave	leave يترك / يغادر	left

Read and learn

Small Actions Make a Big Difference!

الأفعال الصغيرة تحدث فرقًا كبيرًا!



GAS

ELECTRICITY

WATER

Our Earth gives us many important **resources**

like water, electricity, and gas. We need to use them

wisely so they don't **run out**.

We can save water by turning off the tap while brushing our teeth. We can save electricity by switching off lights and fans when we leave the room. Gas helps us cook and stay **warm**, so we should never waste it. We can also remind our family and friends to use these resources carefully. When we save what Earth gives us, we help the planet stay clean and healthy for everyone. Small actions every day can make a big difference!

أرضنا تعطينا العديد من الموارد المهمة مثل الماء والكهرباء والغاز. نحتاج إلى استخدام هذه الموارد بحكمة حتى لا تنفد. يمكننا توفير الماء عن طريق إغلاق الصنبور أثناء تنظيف أسناننا، ويمكننا توفير الكهرباء عن طريق إطفاء الأنوار والمراوح عندما نغادر الغرفة. يساعدنا الغاز على الطهي والبقاء دافئين، لذلك يجب ألا نهدره أبدًا. يمكننا أيضًا تذكير عائلتنا وأصدقائنا باستخدام هذه الموارد بعناية. عندما نوفر ما تمنحه لنا الأرض، نساعد كوكبنا على البقاء نظيفًا وصحيًا للجميع. الأفعال الصغيرة كل يوم يمكن أن تُحدث فرقًا كبيرًا!

Pronunciation



R-controlled words

- The letter **r** changes the sound of the vowel before it.

حرف **r** يغيّر صوت الحرف المتحرك الذي يسبقه.

استمع إلى هذه الكلمات ولاحظ النطق:

Examples:



star

-ar



far



er



teacher



runner

-ir



birthday



shirt

-or



world



work

-ur



fur



nurse

Complete the sentences:

1. My (er) helps us with our classwork.
2. She won the race. She is a fast (er).
3. We had cake on my (ir).
4. The (or) is round.
5. I like to drink (er).



Student's Book

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Our Earth gives us many important like water and gas.
a) resources b) fur c) fans d) garden
2. We need to use resources so they don't run out.
a) carelessly b) wisely c) quickly d) wrongly
3. We can save water by off the tap while brushing our teeth.
a) leaving b) ignoring c) turning d) heating
4. Gas helps us cook and stay
a) cold b) clean c) bright d) warm
5. Turn off lights when leaving a room to electricity.
a) waste b) save c) ignore d) heat

6. Adam didn't practice well, he lost.
 a) so b) but c) or d) nor
7. I like tea, I don't like coffee.
 a) and b) but c) or d) nor
8. Sara is helpful very kind.
 a) and b) but c) or d) so
9. We don't throw trash on the ground, do we burn it.
 a) so b) or c) nor d) but
10. I went shopping, I forgot to buy milk.
 a) but b) and c) nor d) so



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

gas - run out - electricity - tap - carefully

There are many important resources in our planet. We need to use them wisely so they don't ① We can save water by turning off the ② while brushing our teeth. We can save ③ by switching off lights and fans when we leave the room. Reminding our family and friends to use these resources ④ is also important.



Read the text and answer the questions:

Every day, we use resources like water, electricity, and gas. If we are careful, we can save them for the future. Turn off the tap while washing your hands, switch off lights when leaving a room, and use fans instead of air conditioning. Gas should be used only when necessary for cooking or heating because it's valuable. We can also encourage our classmates, family, and friends to use resources wisely.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Turning off the tap while washing your hands helps to save
 a) electricity b) gas c) water d) fans
2. Switching off lights when leaving a room helps to save
 a) water b) electricity c) gas d) resources

B Answer the following questions:

3. Why should gas be used carefully?
4. How can we save electricity at home or at school?
5. What is the main idea of this text?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. She didn't go to school (but) she was sick.
2. You can walk (because) take the bus.
3. I like tennis, (and) I don't like basketball.
4. Youssef doesn't like apples, (or) does he like bananas.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. for - important - Gas - is - heating - cooking - and.

.....

2. resources - to - friends - use - wisely - Remind.

.....

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. how can we help protect resources

.....

2. we should use our resources wisely

.....

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"Saving Resources"

► wisely - electricity - gas

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons 4-5 • Saving Our Planet Earth

• Project: Think and Create



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



brochure

كُتَيْب / منشور



energy

طاقة



pollution

التلوث



sunlight

ضوء الشمس

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

care

عناية / يهتم

description

وصف

soil

تربة

world

العالم

planet

كوكب

fur

فراء

environment

البيئة

friendly

ودود

weather

الطقس

email

رسالة بريد إلكتروني

dirty

مُتسخ

introduction

مقدمة

factories

مصانع

conclusion

خاتمة

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات و حروف جر

I hope you are doing great!

أمل أن تكون بخيرا!

Let's protect them together!

هيا نحميهم معًا!

make art

يصنع فنًا / يقوم بعمل فني

tell about

يخبر عن / يتحدث عن

sign your name

وَقَّع اسمك

kind to

لطيف مع / عطوف على

To grow strong

لِيَنمو قويًا

at the hospital

في المستشفى

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
scare	يخيف	scared	store	يُخزّن	stored
protect	يحمي	protected	greet	يحيّي / يسلم	greeted
release	يطلق / يُحرّر	released	sign	يوقع	signed

Read and learn



Title to the email

To: mai@hotmail.com

From: mona@gmail.com

Subject: Taking Care of Animals and Plants

Greet your friend

Hi Mai,

I hope you are doing great!

Introduction:

What the email is about

I want to tell you about how we can take care of animals and plants. We should always be kind to animals and give them food, water, and a safe place to live. We must never hurt them or scare them.

Body: details

Plants also need care. They need sunlight, water, and clean soil to grow strong. We can plant trees and flowers to make our world more beautiful. If we care for animals and plants, our planet will stay healthy.

Conclusion:
friendly closing

Let's protect them together!

Your friend,

Closing: sign your name

Mona

إلى: mai@hotmail.com

من: mona@gmail.com

الموضوع: العناية بالحيوانات والنباتات

مرحبًا يا مي،

أتمنى أن تكوني بخير!

أريد أن أخبرك عن كيفية العناية بالحيوانات والنباتات. يجب علينا دائمًا أن نكون لطفاء مع الحيوانات وأن نعطيها الطعام والماء ومكانًا آمنًا لتعيش فيه. يجب ألا نؤذيها أبدًا أو نخيفها.

تحتاج النباتات أيضًا إلى العناية. فهي تحتاج إلى ضوء الشمس والماء وتربة نظيفة كي تنمو قوية. يمكننا زرع الأشجار والزهور لجعل عالمنا أجمل. إذا اعتنينا بالحيوانات والنباتات، فإن كوكبنا سيبقى صحيًا.

هيا نحميهم معًا!

صديقتك،

منى

Aa - [Icons] B / U [Icon]

Send



Language Notes:

Steps of Writing an Email

خطوات كتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني

Title to the email

① To:

Write the email address of the person you are sending the email to.

اكتب عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للشخص الذي سترسل له الرسالة.

② From:

Write your own email address.

اكتب عنوان بريدك الإلكتروني.

③ Subject:

Write a short sentence that tells what the email is about.

► Examples: School Event, My Trip, Homework Question

اكتب جملة قصيرة توضح فكرة الرسالة.

مثال: نشاط مدرسي، رحلتي، سؤال عن الواجب

Writing the email

1 Greeting

Greet your friend or the person you are writing to.

▶ Example: Hi Sara, / Hello my friend,

حيّ صديقك أو الشخص الذي تكتب له.

2 Introduction

Start with a short sentence that tells the reader why you are writing the email.

▶ Example: I'm writing to tell you about... / I want to share with you...

ابدأ بجملة قصيرة توضح سبب كتابة الرسالة.

3 Body (Details)

Write 2-3 sentences giving more information. Add details, explanations, or examples.

▶ Example: We had a great school event last week. There were games, music, and activities for everyone.

اكتب 2-3 جمل تحتوي على التفاصيل والمعلومات الإضافية، مثل الشرح أو الأمثلة.

4 Conclusion

End the email with a friendly closing sentence.

▶ Example: Hope to hear from you soon! / Take care!

اختم الرسالة بجملة ودّية.

5 Closing & Signature

Write a simple closing phrase and sign your name.

▶ Example: Best wishes, / Your friend,
Ahmed

اكتب عبارة إغلاق بسيطة ثم وقع باسمك.

Write an email of (30-24) words to your teacher explaining what you learned about protecting our planet. Use at least 5 words from the box.



Student's Book

reuse	reduce	recycle	planet	litter
pollution	animals	energy	electricity	trees

To:

From:

Subject:

Exercises

on

Lessons

4

& 5

1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We should always be to animals.
a) kind b) dirty c) sick d) scary
2. Plants need sunlight, water, and to grow strong.
a) brochures b) email c) bins d) soil
3. We can make our more beautiful by planting trees.
a) world b) bins c) factories d) clothes
4. We should never animals or scare them.
a) release b) protect c) hurt d) store
5. Taking care of animals and plants helps our stay healthy.
a) nurse b) email c) brochure d) planet
6. A good way to share information about protecting the environment is a
a) brochure b) bin c) tap d) fan
7. You can take a taxi walk to the station.
a) but b) or c) because d) nor
8. He doesn't eat meat, does he eat fish.
a) or b) and c) nor d) so

9. Sara cleaned her room, she also watered the plants.
 a) or b) and c) but d) so
10. Ahmed forgot to set his alarm, he was late for school.
 a) because b) so c) and d) nor

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

animals - safe - sunlight - soil - brochure

Taking care of our planet is very important for everyone. Animals need food, water, and a ① place to live, so they can stay healthy and happy. Plants need ②, water, and clean ③ to grow strong. We should always be kind to ④ and grow plants to keep our world safe and beautiful for all living things.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Taking care of our planet means protecting animals and plants every day. Animals need food, water, and a safe place to live so they stay healthy and happy. We should never hurt or scare them. Plants also need care. They require sunlight, water, and clean soil to grow strong. We can plant trees and flowers to make our world more beautiful and full of life. When we take care of animals and plants, our planet will stay safe, healthy, and enjoyable for everyone.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We can make our world more beautiful by planting
 a) trees and flowers b) bins c) electricity d) emails
2. Taking care of animals and plants helps the
 a) planet b) email c) nurse d) brochure

B Answer the following questions:

3. What do plants need to grow strong?

4. How can we make our world more beautiful?



5. What is the main idea of the text?



4

Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. be - kind - We - animals - should - always - to.



2. need - Plants - sunlight - water - to - grow - and.



3. plant - flowers - can - We - everywhere - and - trees.



4. help - can - we - How - our - environment?



?

5

Punctuate the following:

1. Plants need sunlight water and soil



2. what do animals and plants need



6

Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"Caring for Plants"



► healthy - soil - sunlight

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 2

Main Vocabulary

wisely	بحكمة	warm	دافئ
pollution	التلوث	earth	الأرض
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	gas	الغاز (غاز طبيعي)
guide	دليل	electricity	الكهرباء
pollution	التلوث	brochure	كُتَيْب / منشور
tote bags	حقائب قماش / حقائب قابلة لإعادة الاستخدام	energy	طاقة
litter	النفايات / القمامة الملقاة	recycle	يُعيد تدوير
bin	سلة المهملات	reduce	يُقلِّل
surroundings	البيئة المحيطة	reuse	يُعيد استخدام
resources	موارد	planet	كوكب
run out	ينفذ / ينقطع	apply	يطبِّق

Pronunciation



R-controlled words

The letter **r** changes the sound of the vowel before it.

Examples:



Grammar Study



Conjunctions أدوات الربط

○ Conjunctions are words that join parts of a sentence together, helping ideas flow smoothly.

● "nor" adds a second negative idea:

Example: ➤ We don't burn plastic, **nor** do we throw it on the ground.

● "so" shows a result:

Example: ➤ We sort the waste, **so** our neighborhood stays clean.

● "because" shows a reason or cause:

Example: ➤ We recycle paper **because** it helps save trees.

● "and" adds an additional idea:

Example: ➤ I like apples **and** oranges.

● "but" shows a contrast:

Example: ➤ I wanted to play outside, **but** it started raining.

● "or" shows a choice or alternative:

Example: ➤ You can walk **or** take the bus to school.

Dictation:

wisely

pollution

sunlight

guide

healthy

cloth bags

neighborhood

pollution

run out

warm

earth

gas

electricity

brochure

energy

recycle

reduce

تربة

كوكب

البيئة

الطقس

متسخ

منبور

فرق / اختلاف

زملاء الصف

مراوح

مهم

كمية

بلاستيك

مشروع

زجاجات / قوارير

أفكار

مواد

كهرباء

Writing Skills Unit 2

"Caring for Our Planet"

Taking care of our planet is important for everyone. We should reduce the amount of waste we produce every day. It's important to recycle paper, plastic, and glass. We must help protect Earth for the next generation.

"Go Green"

We should try to go green to protect the Earth. Using tote bags helps reduce plastic waste. Many people also ride a bike instead of car. This reduces air pollution. Small actions like these can improve our life.

"Saving Resources "

We must learn to save our resources. This will help our environment. Turn off the lights when you leave a room to saves electricity. Take short showers to save water. We shouldn't also waste gas.

"Caring for Plants"

We must care for our plants. We should give them the good soil. Plants need sunlight to make its food. They also need water to keep strong and healthy. We can help plants grow big and beautiful.



From : nada@gmail.com
To : noura@yahoo.com
Subject : Saving Natural Resources

Hi Nada,

I want to tell you about the natural resources you have in the environment. We have water, electricity, and gas. We should turn off lights when not in use and save water while brushing. Using them wisely helps them last longer. Take care!

Your friend,
Noura.

"Protecting Our Planet"

We should do many things to protect our planet. We should reduce waste by using less plastic and paper. It is important to save water every day. We can also plant trees to make the environment clean and green.

Test 3 on Unit 2

نص الاستماع
موجود آخر الكتاب.

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

Total

40



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (6Ms)

- At school and at home, we (**reduce** - **break** - **throw**) waste to help the environment.
- We save water and (**close** - **turn** - **open**) off the lights to protect our planet.
- Small actions by everyone help keep our planet (**dirty** - **noisy** - **clean**) and healthy.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (4Ms)

take - protect - recycle - planet

Teacher : Why should we save water at school and at home?

Student : Because wasting water is not good for the ①

Teacher : What should we do with plastic bottles?

Student : We should ② them instead of throwing them away.

Teacher : How can we help animals and plants?

Student : We must ③ them and always ④ care of nature.

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

- Plants need water, sunlight, and clean (**soil** - **juice** - **milk**) to grow well.
- The (**bag** - **planet** - **bottle**) is the place where all people, animals, and plants live.
- I stayed at home (**or** - **so** - **because**) it was raining.
- You can take the bus (**but** - **or** - **because**) walk to school.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes: (8Ms)

- They were tired, because they went to sleep early. (.....)
- You can read a story, so watch TV before bed. (.....)
- We don't burn plastic, and do we throw it on the ground. (.....)
- I ran fast, or I didn't win. (.....)

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

(10Ms)

We should take care of animals and plants every day. Animals need food, water, and a safe home, while plants need sunlight, water, and clean soil. Planting trees and flowers helps the environment. By protecting animals and plants, we keep our planet healthy, clean, and beautiful for everyone.

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Animals need food, water, and a safe place to live. (.....)
2. Plants can grow well without sunlight and clean soil. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

3. We should take care of (books - cars - animals and plants).
4. Plants need (moonlight - sunlight - shade), water, and clean soil to grow.
5. Planting trees and flowers helps make our world more (beautiful - noisy - small).

6 Write a short email of (4) sentences using the following guiding words:

(8Ms)

Write an email to your friend, Nada. Tell her about the natural resources you have in the environment. How to use them wisely so they don't run out. Your email is noura@yahoo.com. Your friend's email is nada@gmail.com.

From :

To :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 4 on Unit 2

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

Total

30



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. Using both sides of the paper helps save resources. (.....)
2. Sharing rides with others increases pollution. (.....)
3. Plastic bags can harm sea animals and nature. (.....)
4. Throwing litter in the bin keeps our surroundings dirty. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3Ms)

1. We can old bags and boxes to save materials.
 a) recycle b) apply c) keep d) turn on
2. You should always throw litter in the
 a) car b) house c) bin d) bag
3. Natural resources need to be used
 a) carelessly b) wisely c) quickly d) wastefully
4. We should save electricity turn off the lights.
 a) so b) or c) and d) but
5. She likes apples, she doesn't like bananas.
 a) and b) because c) but d) or
6. She studied hard, she passed the test.
 a) but b) or c) nor d) so

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

environment - save - gas - difference - energy

We can save electricity by turning off lights and fans when we leave a room. ① helps us cook and stay warm, so we should never waste it. Reminding family and friends helps keep our ② clean and healthy. Small daily actions can make a big ③ Always use resources wisely to ④ energy and protect the planet.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(8Ms)

Today at school, we learned how to keep our planet clean using the 3Rs: They stand for Reduce, Reuse, and Recycle. Reduce means using less water, electricity, and materials to avoid waste. Reuse means using items again, like refilling bottles or using old bags. Recycle means turning old paper, plastic, and other materials into new products. By applying these actions at home and school, we can protect the environment, save resources, and help the planet stay clean, safe, and healthy for everyone.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. "Reduce" means
a) using less water and electricity
b) turning old paper into new paper
c) throwing bottles away d) planting trees
2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to the
a) students b) 3Rs
c) teacher d) bottles

B Answer the following questions:

3. What will happen if we apply the 3Rs?

▶

4. How does recycling help the environment and the planet?

▶

5. Give a suitable title to the text.

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: **(4Ms)**

1. She didn't study, (or) she failed the test.
2. We finished our work, (but) we could watch a movie.
3. She bought carrots (so) cucumbers from the market.
4. He was tired, (because) he didn't finish his homework.

6 Punctuate the following: **(4Ms)**

1. we live in a big and beautiful world
▶
2. why should we save energy and electricity
▶

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below: **(8Ms)**

"Protecting Our Planet"



▶ **reduce waste - save water - plant trees**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 3 What's in the Package?

ماذا يوجد في الطرد؟

Learning Outcomes

Speaking

- Use new vocabulary to describe different types of packaging
- Talk about countable and uncountable nouns in everyday situations
- Pronounce words with silent consonant letters (b/w) correctly

Listening

- Use countable and uncountable nouns correctly in sentences
- Recognize and read words with silent consonant letters (b/w)

Reading

- Read dialogs related to packaging and shopping
- Identify countable and uncountable nouns in context

Writing

- Write a narrative paragraph using countable and uncountable nouns
- Organize ideas clearly to describe objects, quantities, and packaging
- Create a poster about how to help others

Lesson 1

Sharing with Families



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



neighborhood

حيّ / جوار



vegetables

خضروات



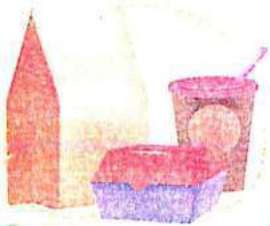
delivery

توصيل



climb the stairs

يصعد السلم



food packages

طرود غذائية



elderly person

شخص مسن



promise

وعد / يوعد



canned food

الأغذية المعلّبة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

volunteer

متطوع

market

سوق

weekend

عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

fruits

فاكهة

beans

فول

peaches

خوخ

seller

بائع

cucumbers

خيار

bread

خبز

shopping

تسوّق

carefully

بعناية / بحرص

lady

سيدة

Adjectives

صفات

canned	معلّب	fresh	طازج
busy	مزدحم	quiet	هادئ
flat	مسطح	angry	غاضب
poor	فقير	hard	شاق

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات و حروف جر

people in need	الأشخاص المحتاجون	filled with	مليء بـ
next door	بالباب المجاور / في الجوار	the top floor	الطابق العلوي
two weeks ago	منذ أسبوعين	in neighborhood	في الحي
early in the morning	مبكراً في الصباح	call out	ينادي بصوت عالٍ
arrive at	يصل إلى	knock on doors	يطرق الأبواب
talk with	يتحدث مع	learn about	يتعلم عن / يعرف عن
at the end of the day	في نهاية اليوم	full of	مملوء بـ
the poor people	الفقراء	hard work	عمل شاق

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

carry	يحمل	carried	shop	يتسوق	shopped
reach	يصل إلى	reached	pack	يعبئ / يجهّز	packed
prepare	يحضّر	prepared	knock	يطرق	knocked
call	ينادي	called	smile	يتسم	smiled

Unit 3

Present	Past	Present	Past
talk يتحدث	talked	promise يعد / يوعد	promised
deliver يُرسل	delivered	receive يتلقى / يستلم	received

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
buy يشتري	bought	give يعطي	gave
show يعرض	showed	sit يجلس	sat
choose يختار	chose	feel يشعر	felt

Listen and read



A Day of Helping Others

يوم لمساعدة الآخرين



Two weeks ago, Kareem and Fatma prepared food packages for the poor people in their neighborhood.

Early in the morning, they went to the market with their mother to buy everything they needed.

منذ أسبوعين، قام كريم وفاطمة بتحضير طرود غذائية للأشخاص المحتاجين في حيّهم. وفي الصباح الباكر، ذهبا إلى السوق مع والدتهما لشراء كل ما يحتاجانه.

The market was busy, full of sellers calling out and showing their vegetables and fruits. Kareem chose a kilo of bananas, while Fatma chose a kilo of peaches. They also bought tomatoes, cucumbers, and bread. After shopping, they packed the food carefully into bags.

كان السوق مزدحمًا، مليئًا بالبائعين الذين ينادون ويعرضون خضرواتهم وفواكههم. اختار كريم كيلو من الموز، بينما اختارت فاطمة كيلو من الخوخ. كما اشتروا الطماطم والخيار والخبز. بعد التسوق، عبأوا الطعام بعناية في الأكياس.

When they arrived at the neighborhood, they knocked on doors and gave the families the food. Kareem helped an elderly lady climb the stairs to her home, and Fatma gave fruits to some children who were smiling. After delivering everything, they sat and talked with the families to learn about their needs. It was hard work, but Kareem and Fatma enjoyed the day and promised to do it again.

عندما وصلوا إلى الحي، طرّقوا الأبواب ووزعوا الطعام على العائلات. ساعد كريم سيدة مسنة على صعود السلم إلى منزلها، وقدمت فاطمة الفواكه لبعض الأطفال الذين كانوا يبتسمون. بعد توزيع كل شيء، جلسوا وتحدثوا مع العائلات للتعرف على احتياجاتهم. كان عملاً شاقاً، لكن كريم وفاطمة استمتعا باليوم ووعدا بتكراره مرة أخرى.

Read and write T (True) or F (False):



Student's
Book

1. They went to the market early in the morning with their mother. (.....)
2. The market was quiet with only a few people. (.....)
3. They also bought tomatoes, cucumbers, and flat bread. (.....)
4. Fatma gave vegetables to some children. (.....)
5. The families were angry when they received the food. (.....)

Read the text again and fill in the blanks:



Student's
Book

1. Two weeks ago, Kareem and Fatma prepared for the poor.
2. The market was busy, full of sellers calling out and showing their and
3. Kareem chose a kilo of
4. Fatma chose a kilo of
5. They also bought,, and bread.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The market was, full of sellers calling out and showing their goods.
a) quiet b) busy c) empty d) flat
2. They went to the market their mother.
a) with b) by c) for d) to
3. Kareem a kilo of bananas.
a) smiled b) climbed c) chose d) sat
4. After shopping, they the food carefully into bags.
a) gave b) promised c) enjoyed d) packed
5. Volunteers usually people in need.
a) leave b) ignore c) help d) run
6. Kareem and Fatma the food packages carefully.
a) prepared b) ignored c) threw d) forgot
7. The children had to the stairs to reach the top floor.
a) jump b) climb c) run d) sit
8. We bought fresh from the market to cook for lunch.
a) pasta b) rice c) canned food d) vegetables

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

packed - market - chose - busy - neighborhood

Two weeks ago, Lina and Adam prepared food packages for the poor people in their neighborhood. They went to the ① with their father to buy food. The market was ②, full of sellers calling out. Lina ③ a kilo of apples, Adam chose a kilo of grapes. They ④ the food into bags carefully.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last Sunday, Sara and Omar decided to help people in need. They prepared boxes of food with rice, beans, and fresh vegetables. Early in the morning, they went to the market with their mother to buy fruits and bread. The market was very busy, full of sellers calling out. After buying everything, they packed the boxes carefully. When they arrived at the neighborhood, they delivered the food and helped some elderly people carry it into their homes.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Sara and Omar went to the market to buy
 a) toys b) books c) clothes d) fruits and bread
2. When they arrived at the neighborhood, they the food to the families.
 a) called b) knocked c) delivered d) visited

B Answer the following questions:

3. When did Sara and Omar go to the market? ▶
4. What items did they include in the food boxes? ▶
5. Summarize the text in two sentences. ▶

4 Punctuate the following:

1. did you help an elderly person ▶
2. kareem prepared food packages for the poor ▶
3. who went to the market last week ▶

5 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"Helping Others in the Neighborhood"

▶ **volunteers - food packages - families**

Lesson 2 Shopping for a Picnic



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



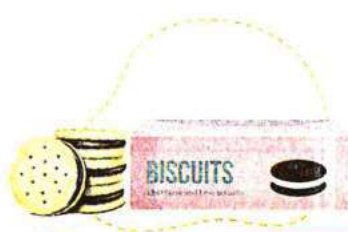
a carton of milk

علبة من الحليب



a bar of chocolate

قطعة من الشوكولاتة



a pack of biscuits

عبوة من البسكويت



a slice of bread

شريحة من الخبز



a kilo of apples

كيلو من التفاح



a piece of cheese

قطعة من الجبن



a bottle of orange juice

زجاجة من عصير برتقال



picnic

نزهة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

shopping list

قائمة التسوق

supermarket

سوبرماركت

trip

رحلة

store

متجر

lunchbox

صندوق غداء

park

حديقة

Food & Drinks الطعام والمشروبات

dessert	حلوى / تحلية	butter	زبدة
cereal	حبوب الإفطار	sugar	سكر
salad	سلطة	breakfast	الإفطار
lunch	الغداء	dinner	العشاء

Adjectives صفات

excited	متحمّس	happy	سعيد
healthy	صحي	hungry	جائع

Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات و حروف جر

That sounds fun!	يبدو هذا رائعًا!	Good idea!	يعمل على
in the park	في الحديقة	go on a picnic	يستخدم الأبار
on the couch	على الأريكة	pack for the picnic	يُحضّر أغراض النزهة

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
want يريد	wanted	add يضيف	added
love يحبّ	loved	remind يُذكّر	reminded

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
eat يأكل	ate	bring يُحضّر / يجلب	brought
drink يشرب	drank	sell يبيع	sold
get يحصل على	got	find يجد	found



Read and learn



Preparing for the Picnic التحضير للنزهة

Noura : Laila, I want to tell you how I prepared for the picnic with my mother last weekend.

نورا : ليلي، أريد أن أخبرك كيف حضّرت للنزهة مع والدي في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الماضي.

Laila : Oh, that sounds fun! What did you do first?

ليلى : أوه، يبدو هذا رائعًا! ماذا فعلتما أولاً؟

Noura : First, we bought a carton of milk for tea. Then my mother chose a bar of chocolate for dessert.

نورا : أولاً، اشترينا علبة من الحليب للشاي. ثم اختارت والدي قطعة من الشوكولاتة للحلوى.

Laila : Which kind did you get?

ليلى : أي نوع اشتريتما؟

Noura : The milk chocolate one. We also packed a big pack of biscuits because my cousins love them.

نورا : الشوكولاتة بالحليب. كما حضّرنّا عبوة كبيرة من البسكويت لأن أبناء عمي يحبونه كثيرًا.

Laila : Good idea! What else did you add?

ليلى : فكرة جيدة! ماذا أضفتما أيضًا؟

Noura : We took a bottle of orange juice, a slice of bread, and a piece of cheese for each sandwich. My mother also reminded me to bring some butter.

نورا : أخذنا زجاجة من عصير البرتقال، وشريحة من الخبز، وقطعة من الجبن لكل شطيرة. كما ذكرتني والدي أن أحضر بعض الزبدة.

Laila : Did you add fruit too?

ليلى : هل أضفتما الفاكهة أيضًا؟

Noura : Yes! We packed a kilo of apples for everyone. It was a lot of work, but we were excited and happy to prepare it together.

نورا : نعم! حضّرنا كيلو من التفاح للجميع. كان العمل كثيرًا، لكننا كنا متحمسين وسعداء لتحضيره معًا.

Read again and answer:



A Circle the correct answer:

1. What did Noura and her mother buy first for the picnic?

- a) a bottle of orange juice b) a carton of milk
c) a pack of biscuits

2. What kind of chocolate did Noura choose?

- a) dark chocolate b) white chocolate
c) milk chocolate

3. What fruit did they pack for the picnic?

- a) apples b) oranges c) bananas

B Answer the following questions:

4. Why do you think Noura and her mother were happy while preparing for the picnic?

▶

5. If you were going on a picnic, what healthy food would you pack and why?

▶

GRAMMAR STUDY

Countable and Uncountable Nouns

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

- **Countable nouns** are things we can **count**.

الأسماء المعدودة هي الأشياء التي يمكننا عدّها.

- We can use **a, an, or numbers** with them.

يمكننا استخدام "a" أو "an" أو الأرقام معها.

Examples:

▶ a pen = one pen two pens three pens

▶ an egg = one egg two eggs three eggs

- **Uncountable nouns** are things we **cannot count** because they don't have separate pieces.

الأسماء غير المعدودة هي الأشياء التي لا يمكننا عدّها لأنها لا تتكون من قطع منفصلة.

- We do not use **a, an, or numbers** with them.

لا نستخدم "a" أو "an" أو الأرقام معها.

Examples:

▶ water, rice, milk, sugar, cheese

Notice:

- Because we cannot count uncountable nouns (like: **milk, sugar, water, cheese, bread**), we use quantifiers to show the amount.

○ لأننا لا نستطيع عدّ الأسماء غير المعدودة (مثل الحليب، السكر، الماء، الجبن، الخبز)، فإننا نستخدم كلمات تدل على الكمية لبيان المقدار.

- a carton of milk → علبة حليب ● two cartons of milk → علبتان من الحليب
 ● a bottle of water → زجاجة ماء ● two bottles of water → زجاجتان من الماء
 ● a piece of cheese → قطعة جبن ● two pieces of cheese → قطعتان من الجبن

- a slice of bread → شريحة خبز
- two slices of bread → شريحتان من الخبز
- some water → بعض الماء
- much sugar → الكثير من السكر
- a little milk → قليل من الحليب
- a lot of rice → الكثير من الأرز

Examples:

- ▶ I bought a carton of milk from the store.
- ▶ He ate a piece of cheese.
- ▶ I ate 2 slices of bread for breakfast.

Fill in the blanks using the words in the box:



Student's Book

pack of - an - kilo of - bottle of - a

1. My father brought home a water for the trip.
2. He saw dog in the park.
3. The grocer sold me a tomatoes for the salad.
4. The teacher gave us a pencil colors for drawing.
5. I have apple in my bag.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. She bought chocolate for dessert.
 - a) a pack of
 - b) a bar of
 - c) a slice of
 - d) a bottle of
2. We need apples for everyone.
 - a) a kilo of
 - b) a slice of
 - c) a piece of
 - d) a bar of
3. I'm thirsty. Can I have water, please?
 - a) a glass of
 - b) an
 - c) a
 - d) many
4. They packed biscuits for the picnic.
 - a) a slice of
 - b) a bottle of
 - c) a pack of
 - d) a kilo of
5. How many are in your bag?
 - a) books
 - b) rice
 - c) juice
 - d) milk

SB

SB

Term 2

Unit 3

6. We have bread for breakfast.

- a) an b) any c) a d) some

7. I want orange juice to drink.

- a) a bar of b) a bottle of c) a slice of d) a pack of

8. We cheese for dinner.

- a) drank b) ate c) found d) reminded

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

dessert - milk - bread - biscuits - carton

Noura and her mother went to the supermarket last weekend. First, they bought a ① of milk for tea. Then they chose a bar of chocolate for ② They also packed a big pack of ③ because their cousins love them. Finally, they took a bottle of orange juice and a slice of ④

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last Sunday, Mona and her aunt prepared a picnic together. They started by buying a bottle of milk for tea and a pack of dark chocolate for dessert. Then, they packed a bag of cookies, some fresh rolls, and slices of cheese for sandwiches. A bottle of apple juice and a kilo of bananas were added for everyone to enjoy. It took a lot of effort, but Mona felt happy and excited to organize everything with her aunt.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Mona and her aunt started preparing the picnic by buying

- a) a pack of cookies b) a bottle of milk
c) a kilo of bananas d) a bottle of juice

2. For sandwiches, they packed

- a) rolls and cheese b) chocolate and milk
c) apples and juice d) bananas and cookies

B Answer the following questions:

3. What drinks did Mona and her aunt take?

▶

4. How did Mona feel while preparing the picnic?

▶

5. Give a suitable title to the text.

▶

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. I have (some) apple in my bag.

2. She bought (a) orange from the market.



3. She drank (a) water after playing.

4. We need a (pieces of) bread for breakfast.



5. Let's buy one (kilos) of orange juice.

6. They ate two (some) of biscuits yesterday.

5 Punctuate the following:

1. what kind of chocolate did noura choose? ▶

.....

2. i went on a picnic with my sister ▶

.....

3. we packed a kilo of apples ▶

.....

4. she ate a slice of bread with cheese ▶

.....

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"A Fun Picnic Day"



▶ family - park - food and drinks

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



cooler

مُبَرَّد



a bunch of bananas

عنقود من الموز



cafeteria

كافتيريا



class captain

رائد الفصل



snack station

محطة الوجبات الخفيفة



art teacher

مُعلِّم الفنون

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

helper

مُساعد

neighbors

جيران

leftovers

بقايا الطعام

kindness

لُطف

playground

ملعب

immediately

فوريًا

Adjectives

صفات

shiny

لامع

crunchy

مقرمش

colorful

ملون

small

صغير

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

line up	يُصَفِّ	on top	في الأعلى
break into squares	يُقَسِّم إلى مربعات	a cooler with ice	مُبرِّد به ثلج
take place	يَحْدُثُ / يُقام	at the end	في النهاية
arrange for	يُرَتِّب لـ	decide to	يقرّر أن
build teamwork	يُنَمِّي روح العمل الجماعي	hold a picnic	يُقيم نزهة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
plan	يُخطِّط	planned		line up	يُصَفِّ	lined up	
share	يُشارك	shared		pass	يُمرِّر	passed	
ask	يُسال	asked		thank	يُشكر	thanked	
arrange	يُرَتِّب	arranged		join	يُنضمّ	joined	
place	يضع	placed		refuse	يُرفض	refused	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
hold	يُقيم	held		break	يُكسر	broke	
set up	يُعِدّ / يُجهِّز	set up		come	يَأْتِي	came	
make	يُصنع	made					



Read and learn



Al Azhar Park

حديقة الأزهر



On Monday, our school held a picnic in Al Azhar Park. Students brought baskets to share. My teacher asked my group to set up a healthy lunch. We arranged vegetables and fruits first: shiny tomatoes and crunchy cucumbers beside colorful peaches and a bunch of bananas. يوم الاثنين، أقامت مدرستنا نزهة في حديقة الأزهر. أحضر الطلاب سلالاً للمشاركة. طلب مُعلّمي من مجموعتي إعداد غداء صحي. رتبنا الخضروات والفواكه أولاً: طماطم لامعة وخيار مقرمش بجانب خوخ ملون وعنقود من الموز.

Next, we made a small snack station. I placed a carton of milk and a bottle of orange juice in a cooler with ice. My friend lined up a slice of bread for each student and added a piece of cheese on top. Our class captain opened a pack of biscuits for dessert and passed a bar of chocolate to the art teacher to break into squares.

بعد ذلك، أعددنا محطة صغيرة للوجبات الخفيفة. وضعت علبة حليب وزجاجة عصير برتقال في مُبرّد به ثلج. صفّ صديقي شريحة خبز لكل طالب وأضاف قطعة من الجبن في الأعلى. فتح رائد الفصل لدينا عبوة من البسكويت للحلوى ومرّر لوح شوكولاتة لمُعلّم الفنون ليقسّمه إلى مربعات.

After eating, they packed fresh food and gave it to the students who couldn't come. Everyone thanked us and promised to join us next time. بعد تناول الطعام، قاموا بتعبئة الطعام الطازج وأعطوه للطلاب الذين لم يستطيعوا الحضور. شكرنا الجميع ووعدوا بالانضمام إلينا في المرة القادمة.

Write (T) True or (F) False:



Student's Book

1. The picnic took place in the school cafeteria. (.....)
2. Each student received a slice of bread with a piece of cheese. (.....)
3. The art teacher refused the bar of chocolate. (.....)
4. Leftovers were packed into food packages for neighbors. (.....)
5. No one thanked the students at the end. (.....)

Rearrange the words to make a correct sentence:



Student's Book

1. school / our / Monday, / On / held / picnic / a
▶
2. baskets / share / to / brought / Students
▶
3. thanked / Everyone / and / us / join / next / to / promised / time
▶
4. vegetables / arranged / We / and / fruits
▶
5. each / of / slice / bread / student / a / friend / My / lined / for / up
▶

Pronunciation



Silent Letters (b, w) الحروف الصامتة (w, b)

- Silent letters are letters in a word that are written but not pronounced when speaking.

الحروف الصامتة هي الحروف الموجودة في الكلمة التي تُكتب ولا تُنطق عند التحدث.

- **Silent b:** The letter "b" is hardly heard when it comes after "m" at the end of a word.

الحرف الصامت b: الحرف "b" يكاد لا يُسمع عندما يأتي بعد "m" في نهاية الكلمة.

Examples:

Silent Letters "b"



climb يتسلق



comb مشط



thumb إبهام



lamb خروف صغير

Silent w: The letter "w" is not pronounced when it comes before "r" at the beginning of a word.

الحرف الصامت w: الحرف "w" لا يُنطق عندما يأتي قبل "r" في بداية الكلمة.

Examples:

Silent Letters "w"



wrist معصم



wrong خطأ

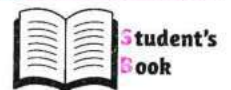


write يكتب



wrap يغلف - يلف

Circle the words with silent letters:



lamb

thumb

book

comb

letter

wrong

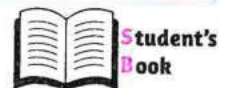
wrist

window

water

write

Fill in the missing letters:



lam _

_ rite

com _

_ rong

_ rist

lam _

clim _

thum _

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

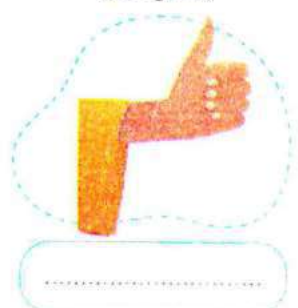
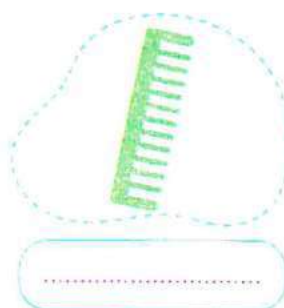
1. On Monday, our school a picnic in Al Azhar Park.
 a) planned b) held c) shared d) made
2. Students brought to share with their classmates.
 a) baskets b) park c) ice d) playground
3. The teacher asked my group to a healthy lunch.
 a) break b) pass c) line up d) arrange
4. The milk and orange juice were placed in a
 a) basket b) cafeteria c) cooler d) snack station
5. Everyone thanked us and promised to next time.
 a) refuse b) join c) plan d) place
6. Preparing and sharing food together helps to and kindness.
 a) build teamwork b) open a snack station
 c) hold a picnic d) line up
7. A bunch of was placed next to the colorful peaches.
 a) milk b) bread c) biscuits d) bananas
8. They made a small to give students snacks during the picnic.
 a) park b) snack station c) cooler d) garden

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

join - cooler - baskets - class captain - fruits

Last weekend, our class decided to hold a picnic in Al Azhar Park. We brought ① with fresh fruits and vegetables. My friend placed the milk and juice in a ② The students lined up bread and cheese, while the ③ opened a pack of biscuits. Everyone enjoyed the snack together and promised to ④ next time.

3 Label the pictures:



4 Punctuate the following:

1. where did the school picnic take place

▶

2. We had a picnic in Al azhar park.

▶

3. they arranged fruits and vegetables for lunch

▶

5 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"Your Visit to Al Azhar Park"



▶ friends - bus - snack station

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons 4-5

- Reem Helps her Mom
- Project: Think and Create A Poster

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



counter

منضدة المطبخ



cleanliness

النظافة



lettuce

خس



meal

وجبة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

kitchen

مطبخ

importance

أهمية

plate

طبق

proudly

بفخر

a picnic basket

سلة للنزهة

Adjectives

صفات

finished

مكتمل / منتهي

responsible

مسؤول

delicious

لذيذ

special

خاص / مميز

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات و حروف جر

make a sandwich

يصنع ساندويتش

feel happy

يشعر بالسعادة

Let's

هيا / دعنا

set the table

يرتب المائدة

on the grass

على العشب

in the kitchen

في المطبخ

pack food

يجهز / يعبئ الطعام

climb the steps

يصعد الدّرج

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
wash	يغسل	washed		explain	يشرح	explained	
pick	يلتقط / يمسك	picked		create	يبتكر	created	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
know	يعرف	knew		say	يقول	said	
hold	يمسك	held		set	يجهز (المائدة)	set	

Read and learn



Title

Helping Mom

مساعدة الأم

Beginning

(When? Who? Where?)

البداية

Last week, Reem helped her mother in the kitchen.

في الأسبوع الماضي، ساعدت ريم والدتها في المطبخ.

Middle

(What happened?)

المنتصف

First, she washed her hands carefully. Then, she placed the bread slices on the counter. Her mother picked some cheese, and Reem washed the lettuce for the sandwiches.

أولاً، غسلت يديها بعناية. ثم وضعت شرائح الخبز على المنضدة. واختارت والدتها بعض الجبن، وغسلت ريم الخس من أجل الساندويتشات.



Together, they decided to add tomatoes to the salad. Reem asked if she could make the sandwiches, and her mother smiled. As she stopped, not knowing what to do next, her mother explained the importance of cleanliness.

معًا، قررنا إضافة الطماطم إلى السلطة. سألت ريم إن كان بإمكانها إعداد الساندويتشات، فابتسمت والدتها. وعندما توقفت لأنها لم تكن تعرف ماذا تفعل بعد ذلك، شرحت لها والدتها أهمية النظافة.

Reem carefully made the sandwiches and held the plate proudly, feeling happy seeing the finished meal. "Let's call the family for lunch!" her mother said.

أعدت ريم السندويتشات بعناية وحملت الطبق بفخر، وشعرت بالسعادة عندما رأت الوجبة جاهزة. وقالت والدتها: "هيا ننادي الأسرة لتناول الغداء!"

Ending

(How did it finish? How did you feel?)

النهاية

Her mother was happy to see her being responsible in the kitchen. Reem smiled, knowing she helped create a delicious meal.

سعدت والدتها برؤيتها تتولى بالمسؤولية في المطبخ. ابتسمت ريم وهي تعلم أنها ساعدت في إعداد وجبة لذيذة.

Read the narrative paragraph and fill in the blanks using the correct past tense form:



Student's Book

Last Friday was a special day. We (go) to the park early in the morning. We (take) a picnic basket with sandwiches, juice, and fruit. My friends and I (play) football on the grass while my parents set the table. After the game, we (eat) together and (talk) about our plans for the weekend. It was one of the happiest days I (have) this year.



How to write a narrative paragraph: كيفية كتابة فقرة تحكي قصة:

- 1 **Title** : "A Fun Day at the Park" **عنوان**
- 2 **Beginning** : When was it? متى كان ذلك?
Where did you go? أين ذهبت?
Last Saturday, I went to Al Azhar Park with my family. The weather was sunny, and the grass looked green and fresh.
- 3 **Middle** : What did you do first? ماذا فعلت أولاً?
What did you do next? ماذا فعلت بعد ذلك?
First, we spread a blanket on the grass. Then, we unpacked the picnic basket and set the table. My little brother helped carry the bags, and I made some sandwiches. After eating, we played ball and climbed the small steps near the playground.
- 4 **Ending** : How did you feel? كيف شعرت?
I felt very happy because I spent a fun day with my family. I smiled seeing everyone enjoy the meal and the games.



Project

A Poster

- A poster is a large printed notice or picture used to inform, advertise, or decorate.

الملصق هو إعلان أو صورة مطبوعة كبيرة تُستخدم للإعلام أو الإعلان أو الزينة.

To make your poster:

لعمل الملصق الخاص بك:

- 1 Write a clear title at the top.

اكتب عنوانًا واضحًا في الأعلى.

- 2 Add pictures that show your ideas.

أضف صورًا توضح أفكارك.

- 3 Include 3-4 simple ideas about the topic.

ضع 3-4 أفكار بسيطة عن الموضوع.

How to Help Others



Pack food and share with others.

جهّز الطعام وشاركه مع الآخرين.

Help my father carry bags.

أساعد والدي في حمل الحقائب.

Help my mom in the kitchen.

أساعد والدي في المطبخ.

Help my grandmother climb the steps.

أساعد جدتي على صعود الدّرج.



Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Reem washed the for the sandwiches.
a) bread b) cheese c) rice d) lettuce
- Her mother explained the of cleanliness.
a) importance b) happiness c) meal d) basket
- She can help a delicious meal.
a) wash b) pick c) create d) stop

4. He wanted to a sandwich by himself.
a) carry b) make c) pack d) climb
5. Before eating, they decided to the table.
a) pick b) set c) hold d) create
6. They spread the blanket before having the picnic.
a) in the kitchen b) on the plate
c) on the grass d) on the counter
7. My grandmother needed help to the steps.
a) carry b) make c) eat d) climb
8. Before cooking, Reem went to the to help her mother.
a) kitchen b) park c) grass d) school

2

Read the text and answer the questions:

Last Saturday, Dina helped her mother in the kitchen. First, she washed her hands carefully and placed the tomato slices on the counter. Her mother picked some cheese, and Dina washed the lettuce for the burgers. Together, they added cucumber to the salad. Dina asked if she could make the burgers, and her mother smiled. She held the plate proudly and felt happy seeing the finished meal. Her mother was very pleased to see her being responsible.

A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Dina helped her mother in the kitchen
a) yesterday b) last Saturday c) last week d) today
2. The underlined word "responsible" means
a) careless b) happy c) helpful d) lazy

B

Answer the following questions:

3. What did Dina do first when she helped her mother in the kitchen?



4. How did Dina feel after making the burgers?

▶

5. Describe how Dina's mother felt when she saw Dina helping in the kitchen.

▶

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. We (goes) to the park last Friday.

2. My birthday was one of the happiest days I (have) this year.

3. We (eating) sandwiches with our friends yesterday.

4. She has (a) orange in her bag.

5. Can I have (a slice of) water, please?

4 Punctuate the following:

1. i help my father carry the heavy bags

▶

2. what was in the picnic basket

▶

3. reem helped her mother in the kitchen

▶

5 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"Making a Delicious Meal Together"



▶ kitchen - bread and burger - sandwiches

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 3

Main Vocabulary

neighborhood	حيّ / جوار	food packages	طرود غذائية
delivery	توصيل	promise	وعد / يوعد
climb the stairs	يصعد السلم	canned food	الأغذية المعلّبة
vegetables	خضروات	fruits	فاكهة
peaches	خوخ	cucumbers	خيار
a bar of chocolate	قطعة من الشوكولاتة	a bottle of orange juice	زجاجة من عصير برتقال
a pack of biscuits	عبوة من البسكويت	a slice of bread	شريحة من الخبز
a piece of cheese	قطعة من الجبن	a kilo of apples	كيلو من التفاح
a bunch of bananas	عنقود من الموز	shopping list	قائمة التسوق
dessert	حلوى / تحلية	cereal	حبوب الإفطار
snack station	محطة الوجبات الخفيفة	cafeteria	كافتيريا
counter	منضدة المطبخ	cleanliness	النظافة

Pronunciation



Silent b: The letter "b" is hardly heard when it comes after "m" at the end of a word.

Examples:



climb



comb



thumb



lamb

Silent w: The letter "w" is not pronounced when it comes before "r" at the beginning of a word.

Examples:



wrist



wrong



write



wrap

Grammar Study



Countable and Uncountable Nouns

● **Countable nouns** are things we can count.

● We can use **a, an,** or **numbers** with them.

Examples: a pen = one pen two pens
three pens.

● **Uncountable nouns** are things we cannot count because they don't have separate pieces.

● We do not use **a, an,** or **numbers** with them.

Examples: water, rice, milk, sugar, cheese

Dictation:

dessert	زبدة
vegetables	جيران
prepare	متطوع
beans	متجر
market	النظافة
breakfast	نزهة
delicious	يُمَرَّر
neighborhood	شريحة من الخبز
a piece of cheese	خس
snack station	الأغذية المعلّبة
receive	يُرسل
leftovers	حبوب الإفطار
shopping	صحي
colorful	يطرق الأبواب
a bar of chocolate	حديقة
arrange	عمل شاق
a carton of milk	قائمة التسوق

Writing Skills Unit 3

"Helping Others in the Neighborhood"

Volunteers prepared food packages for families in the neighborhood. They packed vegetables, fruits, and bread carefully. Then, they delivered the packages, and everyone felt happy to see the families smile.

"A Fun Picnic Day"

Last Sunday, my family went to the park. We brought baskets with food and drinks. Everyone played games and ran on the grass. We felt happy to spend time together.

"Your Visit to Al Azhar Park"

Last Monday, I went to Al Azhar Park with my friends. We took the bus and brought baskets. At the park, we enjoyed a snack station. Everyone had fun together.

"Making a Delicious Meal Together"

Yesterday, my family and I cooked in the kitchen. We prepared bread and burgers carefully. Then, we made sandwiches with cheese and vegetables. All of us felt happy to enjoy the meal together.

"Sharing Food at the Park"

My friends and I had a picnic at the park last week. We brought baskets full of food. Everyone shared the food happily with friends.

"Helping Others"

Last weekend, I spent time helping others in my neighborhood. I shared food with families who needed it. I also carried bags for elderly persons. It felt good to make a difference.

Test 5 on Unit 3

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

Total

40

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:



(6Ms)

1. Last weekend, Sara helped her mother in the (garage - kitchen - garden).
2. She washed the vegetables (carefully - quickly - quietly) and prepared sandwiches.
3. Sara had helped (eat - drink - create) a delicious meal for the family.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (4Ms)

next door - poor people - knocked - carried

Sara: Who do Kareem and Fatma help?

Adam: They help the ① in their neighborhood.

Sara: How did they take the food to the families?

Adam: They ② on the doors to deliver the packages.

Sara: Did they help anyone with heavy bags?

Adam: Yes! They ③ the food carefully to each house.

Sara: Where did they deliver the food?

Adam: They gave it to families living ④ and on the top floor.

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. Kareem helped an elderly lady climb the (stairs - garden - playground) to her home.
2. The market was busy, full of (students - sellers - teachers) calling out and showing their vegetables.
3. Yesterday, the students (held - hold - holding) a picnic in Al Azhar Park.
4. I would like (a - an - a piece of) cheese on my sandwich.

Term 2

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

(8Ms)

1. Let's make an sandwich. (.....)
2. I have a egg in my lunchbox. (.....)
3. He needs a slices of bread for breakfast. (.....)
4. She bought two carton of milk from the store. (.....)

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

(10Ms)

On Monday, our class went to Al Azhar Park. We brought baskets, lined up bread, and shared fruits. The teacher asked us to arrange a snack station. Everyone felt happy, and we promised to join again next time.

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The class went to Al Azhar Park on Monday. (.....)
2. The students refused to share the food. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

3. Everyone felt (happy - poor - sick) and promised to join again next time.
4. The teacher asked them to arrange a (game - bus - snack) station.
5. The students brought baskets to (share - buy - sell) the food.

6 Write a short paragraph of (4) sentences using the following guiding words:

(8Ms)

"Sharing Food at the Park"

green fields - streams - boat



.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 6 on Unit 3

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

Total

30



(2Ms)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Lina and her brother helped the poor people in their neighborhood. (....)
2. They prepared the food at night. (....)
3. They packed the food into bags. (....)
4. They felt sad at the end of the day. (....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3Ms)

1. The fish meal looked very
 a) delicious b) angry c) sad d) busy
2. He letters to our house yesterday.
 a) opened b) joined c) delivered d) promised
3. The lady needs help to climb the stairs.
 a) baby b) young c) teen d) elderly
4. I want to buy bananas.
 a) a b) some c) any d) an
5. They football on the grass last week.
 a) playing b) played c) play d) plays
6. There is apple on the table.
 a) a bottle of b) a glass of c) an d) a

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

promised - fruits - counter - plate - delivered

Last Saturday, Ahmed helped his father in the kitchen. He washed the vegetables and placed them on the ① Then, he prepared sandwiches and arranged ② on a plate. After that, he ③ the food to the families. Everyone ④ to help again next weekend.

Term 2

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

(8Ms)

Last Saturday, Ali and his sister helped their mother prepare food packages for the people in their neighborhood. Early in the morning, they went to the market to buy fresh vegetables, fruits, and bread. They packed everything carefully into bags and delivered them to the families. Later, they held a small picnic in Al Azhar Park. Ali arranged a snack station with sandwiches and juice. Everyone felt happy and proud to help others and enjoy the day together

A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Ali, his sister, and their mother went to the market to buy
 a) vegetables only b) fruits only c) snacks only
 d) vegetables, fruits, and bread
- The picnic took place in
 a) their home b) Al Azhar Park
 c) the school d) the playground

B

Answer the following questions:

- When did they go to the market?

▶

- What did Ali arrange for the picnic?

▶

- Give a suitable title to the text.

▶

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

- There is (an) cat sleeping on the couch.
- We (talks) about our plans for the weekend yesterday.

3. I want to buy two (kilo) of apples.

4. They drank one (bottles) of water.

6 Punctuate the following:

(4Ms)

1. he ate a piece of cheese for breakfast

▶

2. where did your school hold a picnic

▶

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

(8Ms)

“Helping Others”

sharing food - carrying bags - elderly persons

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review 1 | On Units 1-2-3



Test 7 based on units 1 - 2 - 3

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



(6Ms)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. Ahmed and Omar visited a small (park - village - school) near the city.
2. They enjoyed fresh air, colorful flowers, and tall (buildings - birds - bags).
3. At the market, they bought fresh (fruits - vegetables - meat).

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (4Ms)

soil - plants - water - animals

Hana: Hi, Layla! I want to tell you about how we can take care of animals and plants.

Layla: That sounds interesting! What should we do first?

Hana: We should always be kind to ① and give them food, ②, and a safe place to live.

Layla: And what about ③?

Hana: They need sunlight, and clean ④ to grow strong.

Layla: Wow! We can also plant trees and flowers to make the world more beautiful.

Hana: Of course, we can.

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. We bought fresh (stairs - vegetables - chairs) from the market yesterday.
2. The (seller - teacher - nurse) takes care of sick people at the hospital.
3. Sara didn't have breakfast (because - so - but) she wasn't hungry.
4. My parents (move - moves - moved) to Cairo in 2000.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

(8Ms)

1. You can have pasta nor pizza for lunch. (.....)
2. They packed a kilos of bananas for everyone. (.....)
3. He doesn't eat meat for dinner yesterday. (.....)
4. We sort the waste, but our neighborhood stays clean. (.....)

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

(10Ms)

Kareem and Adel want to help protect our planet. They save water by turning off taps, walk or ride bikes to reduce air pollution, and use reusable bags instead of plastic. They always throw litter in bins and remind others to do the same to keep the planet clean, safe, and green.

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Kareem and Adel save water by turning off taps when not needed. (.....)
2. They throw litter on the ground to keep the planet clean. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

3. Kareem and Adel save (electricity - food - water) by turning off taps when not needed.
4. They use (reusable - plastic - metal) bags instead of plastic to protect the planet.
5. They always throw (plants - litter - animals) in bins and remind others to do the same.

6 Write a short paragraph of (4) sentences using the following guiding words:

(8Ms)

"Your Trip to the Mountains"

fields - peaceful - paths - green trees

Test 8 based on units 1 - 2 - 3

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

Total

30



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. Ahmed and Layla helped their neighbors by collecting food for poor families (.....)
2. They went to the market late at night to buy food. (.....)
3. They packed fruits, vegetables, and bread carefully into bags. (.....)
4. They felt sad after helping others. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3Ms)

1. Hoda bought a of chocolate yesterday.
 a) bottle b) bar c) slice d) glass
2. We walked on small in the mountains.
 a) shops b) buildings c) paths d) rooms
3. You can old bottles to make art or store things.
 a) reuse b) replant c) reply d) repair
4. Hossam travel to Alexandria last week?
 a) Do b) Does c) Did d) Doing
5. They wanted to play basketball, it started to rain.
 a) but b) so c) or d) nor
6. I have apple for dinner.
 a) some b) a c) may d) an

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

remind - litter - green - surroundings - tote bags

We can all help protect our planet every day. Using reusable ① instead of plastic ones when shopping helps protect sea animals and nature. We should always throw ② in bins and ③ our friends to do the same. Together, we keep the Earth clean and ④

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(8Ms)

Last Saturday, Zain went with his father to the Nile River. They took a small boat early in the morning. Zain helped his father sail and saw fishermen catching fish. He noticed green farms with vegetables and fruits, tall palm trees, and children playing by the riverbank. They ate bread and cheese under a tree. Zain listened to his father's stories about the Nile's history. He felt happy and excited to visit again soon.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Zain helped his father a small boat on the Nile River.
a) sail b) drive c) cook d) build
2. They ate bread and under a tree while listening to stories.
a) cheese b) rice c) pizza d) pasta

B Answer the following questions:

3. Who did Zain go to the Nile River with?
4. What did Zain see on the riverbank and near the farms?
5. How did Zain feel at the end of his trip?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. I didn't (watch) TV yesterday.
2. I ate two slice of pizza for lunch.
3. We don't waste water, or do we leave taps running.
4. How (much) books are there in your bag?

6 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. what did the students arrange first for lunch
2. the weather is very warm today

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below: (8Ms)

"Your Visit to the Village"

weather - flowers - farmers



Unit 4

Let's Celebrate

هيا تحتفل

Learning Outcomes

Speaking

- Talk about different celebrations using simple sentences.
- Use adjectives to describe people, objects, and events.
- Pronounce plural nouns with final -s correctly (/s/, /z/, /ɪz/).

Reading

- Read short texts about different celebrations and understand the main idea
- Identify adjectives and words with final -s in context
- Read and understand blog examples, recognizing greetings, body, and conclusion.



Listening

- Listen carefully to short texts or dialogs about celebrations and blogs
- Identify key details such as events, dates, activities, and descriptions
- Recognize adjectives and plural nouns with final -s in spoken sentences.
- Distinguish between the /s/, /z/, and /ɪz/ sounds in words.



Writing

- Write a blog about a celebration.
- Use adjectives to describe people, objects, and events form plural nouns using final -s correctly.
- Organize ideas clearly with a beginning, middle, and closing
- Design a "Thank You" card for the teacher.

Lesson 1

Family Gathering



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



exchange gifts

يتبادل الهدايا



perform music

يعزف موسيقى



play a game

يلعب لعبة



eat special food

يتناول طعام مميز



family gathering

تجمع عائلي



band

فرقة موسيقية



oud

عود (آلة موسيقية)



chess

شطرنج



socialize with friends

يتواصل مع الأصدقاء



hide-and-seek

لعبة الغمضة (استغماية)

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

desserts

حلويات

stage

مسرح / منصة

fruit salad

سلطة فواكه

holidays

عطلات / إجازات

grilled chicken

دجاج مشوي

weekend

عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

stuffed grape leaves

ورق عنب محشي

kindness

لطف / طيبة

Unit 4

together	معًا	musical instrument	آلة موسيقية
celebration	احتفال	drum	طبلعة

Adjectives صفات

delicious	لذيذ	amazing	مذهل / رائع
grilled	مشوي	bored	ضجر / ممل
musical	موسيقي	special	مميز

Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر

during the family gathering	أثناء تجمع العائلة	show love and kindness	نظهر الحب والالطف
sit together	نجلس معًا	It was amazing!	كان رائعًا!

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
name يُسمِّي	named	remember يتذكر	remembered
exchange يُبادل / يتبادل	exchanged	clap يُضَفِّق	clapped
perform يؤدِّي	performed	cheer يهتف / يشجع	cheered
socialize يختلط اجتماعيًا	socialized	cook يطبخ	cooked
enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed	laugh يضحك	laughed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
get يحصل على	got	sit يجلس	sat
eat يأكل	ate	win يفوز	won
show يُظهر / يعرض	showed	bring يُحضِر / يجلب	brought

Listen and read



A Day with Family and Friends

يوم مع العائلة والأصدقاء

Salma : Hi Amr! Did you enjoy the family gathering we had last weekend?

سلمى : مرحبًا يا عمرو! هل استمتعت بتجمُّع العائلة الذي أقمناه في نهاية الأسبوع الماضي؟

Amr : Yes, it was amazing! We sat together, talked, and even listened to my uncle **perform music** on his oud.

عمرو : نعم، كان رائعًا! جلسنا معًا، وتحدثنا، وحتى استمعنا إلى عمي وهو يعزف الموسيقى على العود الخاص به.

Salma : I remember! Everyone clapped and cheered.

سلمى : أتذكر ذلك! صفق الجميع وهتفوا.

Amr : The games were fun too. I **played a game** of chess with Kareem, and he won.

عمرو : كانت الألعاب ممتعة أيضًا. لعبت مباراة شطرنج مع كريم، وفاز هو.

Salma : I played a game of **hide-and-seek** with my cousins, and we all enjoyed it.

سلمى : لعبت لعبة الغميضة مع أولاد عمي، واستمتعنا جميعًا بها.

Amr : The food was delicious. We got to **eat special food** like grilled chicken and cake.

عمرو : كان الطعام لذيذًا. تناولنا أطعمة مميزة مثل الدجاج المشوي والكعك.

Salma : Did you bring anything?

سلمى : هل أحضرت أي شيء؟

Amr : I brought fruit salad, and everyone liked it. We also **exchanged gifts** and **socialized with friends** and family all day.

عمرو : أحضرت سلطة فواكه، وأعجبت الجميع. كما تبادلنا الهدايا وتواصلنا اجتماعيًا مع الأصدقاء والعائلة طوال اليوم.

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Salma and her grandmother cooked the chicken in the morning. (.....)
2. Salma and Amr were bored during the celebration. (.....)
3. Amr played hide-and-seek with Kareem. (.....)
4. The family socialized with friends and family all day. (.....)
5. Salma's uncle performed music for the family. (.....)

Fill in the blanks using the words in the box:

**exchange gifts - perform music - eat special food
- play a game - socialize with friends**

1. During the family gathering, we and laugh together.
2. At the party, the children like to like football and hide-and-seek.
3. The band will on the stage for everyone to enjoy.
4. Families such as rice, meat, and delicious desserts.
5. On holidays, many people to show love and kindness.

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My sister can on her oud very well.

a) hide-and-seek	b) chess
c) perform music	d) socialize with friends
2. Yesterday, I decided to with my friends in the garden.

a) play a game	b) drive a car
c) band	d) family gathering
3. Yesterday, our whole family met at a

a) band	b) family gathering
c) chess	d) guitar

4. During holidays, children like to at parties.

- a) socialize with friends
c) band

- b) fruit salad
d) cake

5. During celebrations, we like to exchange

- a) bands b) families c) music d) gifts

6. At the festival, the students performed songs in the school

- a) food b) band c) chess d) hide-and-seek

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

oud - gifts - hide-and-seek - lessons - songs

Last weekend, we had a wonderful family gathering. We socialized with friends, played games like chess and ①, and enjoyed special food. My dad performed music with his ②, while a band played lively ③ Everyone laughed, shared stories, and even exchanged ④ It was a joyful day!

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last weekend, our family had a joyful celebration. My uncle and cousins joined us, and we spent the day together playing football and enjoying the holiday. Everyone shared stories full of love and kindness, making the day special. We laughed, played games, and created happy memories that brought us closer. It was a wonderful time that showed the importance of family and communication. We all promised to meet again soon for another fun day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Last weekend, our family had a joyful

- a) football b) celebration c) holiday d) story

2. Everyone shared stories full of and kindness.

- a) fun b) games c) love d) food

B Answer the following questions:

3. Who joined the family celebration?

4. What activities did the family do together during the celebration?

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

4 Punctuate the following:

1. did you enjoy the family gathering yesterday

2. amr played hide-and-seek with kareem.

3. i played a game of chess with my brother

4. we ate special food like grilled chicken and cake

5 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"A Wonderful Family Gathering"

Guiding words:

▶ games - food - family

Lesson 2

End-of-Year Party



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



take photos

يلتقط صورًا



wear special clothes

ارتداء ملابس مميزة



celebration

احتفال



clap

يُصَفِّق / تصفيق



school playground

ساحة المدرسة



fireworks

ألعاب نارية

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

fences

أسوار

lights

أضواء

pencil case

مقلمة

center

مركز

party

حفلة

night

ليل / مساء

part

جزء

song

أغنية

classroom

فصل دراسي

school library

مكتبة المدرسة

basket

سلة

presents

هدايا

palm trees

أشجار نخيل

sports day

يوم رياضي

concert

حفل موسيقي

air

هواء

Unit 4

Adjectives

صفات

shiny	لامع	colorful	ملون
loud	صاخب / عالي الصوت	enormous	ضخم
large	كبير	bright	مشرق
ready	جاهز	unforgettable	لا يُنسى
best	الأفضل	hard	صعب / قوي

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات و حروف جر

look beautiful	يبدو جميلاً	the best part	الجزء الأفضل
shiny lights all around	أضواء لامعة في كل مكان	everyone cheered loudly	هتف الجميع بصوت عالٍ
place carefully	يضع بعناية	work hard	يعمل بجد
lit up the sky	أضاء السماء	an unforgettable celebration	احتفال لا يُنسى

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
look	يبدو	looked		place	يضع	placed	
smile	يبتسم	smiled		carry	يحمل	carried	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
wear	يرتدي	wore		think	يفكر	thought	
sing	يغني	sang		feel	يشعر	felt	
hang	يعلق	hung		light	يضيء	lit	



Read and learn

Unforgettable Celebration

احتفال لا ينسى



The school playground looked beautiful during the celebration. There were colorful balloons hanging from the **fences** and shiny lights all around the place.

بدأت ساحة المدرسة جميلة أثناء الاحتفال. كانت هناك بالونات ملونة معلقة على الأسوار وأضواء لامعة في كل مكان.

A band played a loud song. The students **wore their special clothes** and smiled happily. Everyone **clapped**, laughed, and enjoyed the music together.

عزفت فرقة موسيقية أغنية صاخبة. ارتدى الطلاب ملابسهم الخاصة وابتسموا بسعادة. صفق الجميع، وضحكوا، واستمتعوا بالموسيقى معًا.

In the center of the playground, a large cake was placed carefully on an enormous table. Our teacher was very happy because the playground looked clean, bright, and ready for the party. We played games, sang songs, and socialized with our friends.

في وسط ساحة المدرسة، وُضع كعك كبير بعناية على طاولة ضخمة. كان معلمنا سعيدًا جدًا لأن الساحة كانت نظيفة ومشرفة وجاهزة للحفلة. لعبنا الألعاب، وغنينا الأغاني، وتواصلنا مع أصدقائنا.

Many students **took photos** to remember the special day, and some even made short videos. The best part came at night when the **fireworks** started. They lit up the sky with beautiful colors, and everyone cheered loudly. It was an unforgettable celebration that we will always remember.

التقط العديد من الطلاب الصور لتذكر هذا اليوم المميز، وقام بعضهم حتى بصنع مقاطع فيديو قصيرة. جاء الجزء الأفضل في الليل عندما بدأت الألعاب النارية. أضاءت السماء بألوان جميلة، وهتف الجميع بصوت عالٍ. كان احتفالاً لا يُنسى سنتذكره دائماً.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Where did the celebration take place?
 - a) in the classroom
 - b) in the school playground
 - c) in the school library
2. What was placed on the enormous table?
 - a) a basket of fruits
 - b) a box of presents
 - c) a large cake
3. Why was the teacher happy?
 - a) because the students sang songs
 - b) because the playground was clean and bright
 - c) because the students brought gifts

GRAMMAR STUDY



Adjectives الصفات

- **Adjectives are words that describe nouns. They tell us what something looks, feels, sounds, or smells like.**

الصفات هي كلمات تصف الأسماء. فهي تخبرنا كيف يبدو الشيء، أو كيف يشعر، أو كيف يبدو صوته، أو كيف تكون رائحته.

Example:

- ▶ The colorful balloons flew in the air ("colorful" describes "balloons").
حلقت البالونات الملونة في الهواء. ("ملونة" تصف "البالونات").

- **Describing people:** tall, short, kind, friendly, happy
وصف الأشخاص: طويل، قصير، لطيف، ودود، سعيد

- **Describing objects:** big, small, colorful, shiny, soft
وصف الأشياء: كبير، صغير، ملون، لامع، ناعم

- **Describing places:** quiet, busy, peaceful, beautiful, crowded
وصف الأماكن: هادئ، مزدحم، مسالم، جميل، مزدحم

- **Describing feelings/events:** exciting, fun, amazing, wonderful, boring
وصف المشاعر أو الأحداث: مثير، ممتع، مذهل، رائع، ممل

Study these adjectives:

ادرس هذه الصفات:

kind	لطيف / عطوف	lazy	كسول
rude	وقح / غير مؤدب	friendly	ودود
wooden	خشبي	angry	غاضب
busy	مشغول	quiet	هادئ
sad	حزين	noisy	صاخب / مزعج
boring	ممل	cold	بارد
big	كبير	brown	بني اللون
fun	ممتع / مرح	round	دائري
excited	متحمس	wonderful	رائع
peaceful	هادئ / مسالم	crowded	مزدحم
heavy	ثقيل	green	اخضر اللون
high	عالٍ / مرتفع	tall	طويل

Circle the adjectives in each sentence:



1. The kind teacher helped all the students with their work.
2. I have a colorful kite that flies high in the sky.
3. I live in a peaceful village with many tall palm trees.
4. She felt excited when she saw her friends at the park.
5. The wonderful school concert made everyone smile.

Rearrange the words to make a sentence:



1. a / kind / is / Reem / girl
2. went / to / We / park / big / the
3. had / an / day / exciting / We
4. found / box / a / brown / I
5. school / fun / was / The / trip

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. During the party, all the students
 a) study b) clap c) run d) read
2. We went to the to play games and have fun.
 a) school playground b) classroom c) library d) supermarket
3. Everyone wore special for the celebration.
 a) pencils b) lights c) chairs d) clothes
4. My family took many to remember the happy day.
 a) photos b) gardens c) flags d) classrooms
5. We watched bright in the sky during the festival.
 a) shoes b) hats c) fireworks d) fences
6. The boy helped his friend carry the heavy bag. SB
 a) friendly b) lazy c) rude
7. Sara bought a dress for the school party. SB
 a) wooden b) beautiful c) angry
8. We went to a park full of green trees and flowers. SB
 a) red b) quiet c) hard
9. Omar felt when he lost his pencil case. SB
 a) happy b) sad c) noisy
10. The sports day made all the students cheer and clap. SB
 a) boring b) exciting c) cold

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fireworks - photos - socialized - videos - friends

Our playground looked clean, and ready for the party. We played games, sang songs, and ① with our friends. Many students took ② to remember the special day, and some even made short ③ The best part came at night when the ④ started. They lit up the sky with beautiful colors, and everyone cheered loudly.

3 Sort the adjectives and write the words in the correct box:

small - sad - brave - round - boring - shiny - polite - ancient
- dangerous - cheerful - modern - sleepy

Describing people	Describing objects	Describing places	Describing feelings/events

4 Punctuate the following:

1. did you see the beautiful fireworks

▶

2. i made a short video of the balloons

▶

3. where did the celebration take place

▶

4. everyone clapped, laughed, and enjoyed the music

▶

5 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"A School Party"

▶ Guiding words:

▶ playground - special clothes - photos

.....

.....

.....

.....



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



hang shiny ribbons

يعلّق شرائط لامعة



candles

شموع



decorate

يزيّن المكان



cheerful

مبتهج



wrapped the giveaways

غَلّف الهدايا التذكارية



guests

ضيوف

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

living room

غرفة المعيشة

happiness

السعادة

party hat

قبعة حفلة

wish

أمنية

joy

فرح

laughter

ضحك

corner

زاوية / ركن

tasty

لذيذ / شهي

dish

طبق

birthday party

حفلة عيد ميلاد

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات و حروف جر

celebrate his birthday

يحتفل بعيد ميلاده

wake up excited

يستيقظ متحمساً

with his sister's help

بمساعدة أخته

make the house cheerful

يجعل المنزل مبهجاً

share his happiness

يشارك سعادته

join the fun

يشارك في المرح

blow out the candles

ينفخ الشموع

full of joy and laughter

مليء بالفرح والضحك

make a wish

يتمنى أمنية

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

celebrate يحتفل

celebrated

share يشارك

shared

decorate يزين

decorated

arrive يصل

arrived

bake يخبز

baked

join ينضم

joined

wrap يغلف

wrapped

receive يستلم

received

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

wake up يستيقظ

woke up

blow ينفخ

blew

put يضع

put

sit يجلس

sat

buy يشتري

bought

hide يخفي

hid



Read and learn



Zein's Birthday Party

حفلة عيد ميلاد زين



Last Friday, Zein celebrated his birthday at home. In the morning, he woke up excited and started getting prepared for the big day. With his sister's help, he cleaned the living room and **decorated** it with colorful balloons.

في يوم الجمعة الماضي، احتفل زين بعيد ميلاده في المنزل. في الصباح، استيقظ متحمساً وبدأ يستعد لليوم الكبير. بمساعدة أخته، نظّف غرفة المعيشة وزيّنها بالبالونات الملونة.

His father helped him hang the balloons. They **hung shiny ribbons** and bright lights to make the house **cheerful**. Zein's mother baked a delicious cake, and he put **candles** on the top. In the afternoon, Zein **wrapped the giveaways** he had bought for his friends because he wanted to share his happiness.

ساعده والده في تعليق البالونات. علقوا شرائط لامعة وأضواء مشرقة لجعل المنزل مبهجاً. خبزت والدته زين كعكة لذيذة، ووضع هو الشموع على القمة. في الظهر، غلّف زين الهدايا التذكارية التي اشتراها لأصدقائه لأنه أراد مشاركة سعادته.

When the **guests** arrived, everyone wore a party hat and joined the fun. They sang songs, played **games**, and enjoyed tasty food. At the end, Zein blew out the candles, made a wish, and received gifts from his friends. It was a wonderful birthday celebration full of joy and laughter.

عندما وصل الضيوف، ارتدى الجميع قبعات الحفلة وانضموا إلى المرح. غنوا الأغاني، ولعبوا الألعاب، واستمتعوا بالطعام اللذيذ. في النهاية، أطفأ زين الشموع، وتمنى أمنية، واستلم الهدايا من أصدقائه. كان احتفال عيد ميلاد رائع مليء بالفرح والضحك.

Write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Zein decorated his house with pictures. (.....)
2. He put candles on a cake for the party. (.....)
3. Zein wore special clothes during the celebration. (.....)
4. Zein wrapped presents to give to his friends. (.....)
5. Zein celebrated his birthday at the playground. (.....)



Student's Book

Pronunciation



Suffix - Final -s sounds in plural

- We use plural forms of nouns when we are talking about more than one person, animal, thing, or object.

نستخدم صيغة الجمع للأسماء عندما نتحدث عن أكثر من شخص، أو حيوان، أو شيء، أو غرض.

Example with people:



One friend



friends
(more than one)

Example with animals:



One cat



cats
(more than one)

Example with objects:



One book



books
(more than one)

- When the noun is singular, we usually add “-s” to the verb.

عندما يكون الاسم مفردًا، نضيف عادةً “-s” إلى الفعل.

Example: The girl **hides** under the table.

- ① Final **-s** is pronounced /s/ after (p - t - f - k).

يُنطق حرف الجمع “-s” بصوت /s/ بعد أصوات هذه الحروف (p - t - f - k).

Examples: shops - cats - roofs - books

- ② Final **-s** is pronounced /ɪz/ after (s - sh - ch - x).

يُنطق حرف الجمع “-s” بصوت /ɪz/ بعد أصوات هذه الحروف (s - sh - ch - x).

Examples: buses - brushes - watches - boxes

- ③ Final **-s** is pronounced /z/ after (b - d - g - l - m - n - r - v).

يُنطق حرف الجمع “-s” بصوت /z/ بعد أصوات هذه الحروف (b - d - g - l - m - n - r - v).

Examples: jobs - beds - bags - balls - drums - cans - cars - leaves

/s/	/z/	/ɪz/
guests	ribbons	houses
books	candles	boxes

Change the sentences from singular to plural:



Student's
Book

1. The cat sits on the chair.

▶

2. The child plays in the garden.

▶

3. The bus stops at the corner.

▶

4. The fox hides under the tree.

▶

5. The dish is on the table.

▶

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We will the room before the party starts.
a) decorate b) forget c) close d) wash
- My mom and I wrapped the for all the guests.
a) room b) giveaways c) TV d) class
- Everyone felt when the party started.
a) sleepy b) sad c) cheerful d) lonely
- Many arrived early to enjoy the celebration.
a) drivers b) guests c) sellers d) swimmers
- The children helped their teacher hang on the classroom walls.
a) ribbons b) lunch c) books d) cloth

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

games - candles - giveaways - food - decorated

Last week, Lina celebrated her birthday in the garden. She and her friend ① the place with balloons and shiny ribbons. Her mother made a chocolate cake, and Lina added ② on the top. She also wrapped small ③ for her friends. When the guests came, they played ④ and enjoyed a cheerful celebration.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

One bright morning, Sunrise School organized a joyful party for all the students. Teachers decorated the playground with balloons, banners, and colorful lights. The students helped hang shiny ribbons and set up tables for snacks. When the party started, everyone wore cheerful hats and enjoyed the music. They played games, shared giveaways, and tasted delicious treats. At the end, the teacher thanked the students for their teamwork and wished them many happy moments together. It was a wonderful school celebration.

Unit 4

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The students helped before the party began.
 - write stories
 - plant trees
 - clean classrooms
 - hang shiny ribbons
- Everyone wore cheerful hats and during the party.
 - read books
 - enjoyed the music
 - studied hard
 - painted pictures

B Answer the following questions:

- What did the teachers use to decorate the playground?
- What did the students do to prepare for the party?
- Give a suitable title to the text.

4 Change into plural and sort:

friend - rat - house - job - shop - purse

/s/	/z/	/ɪz/

5 Punctuate the following:

- the teacher gave everyone colorful hats
- did you taste the delicious cake

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"A Cheerful Birthday Party"

► cake - happy - guests



Lessons 4-5

- Labor Day
- Project: Think and Create



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



Labor Day

عيد العمال



neighborhood

حيّ سكني



colorful card

بطاقة ملونة



honor

يُكرّم

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

workers	عمال	country	بلد / وطن
moment	لحظة	event	حدث / فعالية
together	معًا	effort	جهد
Sinai	سيناء	soldier	جندي
flag	علم	hero	بطل

Adjectives

صفات

small	صغير	free	حر
brave	شجاع	proud	فخور

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

on May 1 st	في الأول من مايو	celebrate Labor Day	يحتفل بعيد العمال
honor workers	يُكرّم العمال	appreciate workers	يُقدّر العمال
join a small event	ينضم إلى حدث (فاعلية)	have a wonderful time	يقضي وقتًا رائعًا
share happy moments	نشارك اللحظات السعيدة	thank for	يشكر على

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
honor	يُكْرَم	checked	يُتَحَقَّق من / يفحص
appreciate	يُقَدَّر	freed	يُحْرَر
add	يُضِيف	waved	يَلْوَح

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
tell	يُخْبِر	held	يُعْقِد / يُقِيم
	told	hold	



Writing Notes:

How to write a blog post

كيف تكتب مدونة

- ① Begin with the title. ابدأ بالعنوان.
- ② Write your name. اكتب اسمك.
- ③ Write the introduction, make it clear and summarized. اكتب المقدمة واجعلها واضحة ومختصرة.
- ④ Write the body of the blog with details. اكتب محتوى المدونة بالتفاصيل.
- ⑤ Conclude your main idea. اختتم فكرتك الرئيسية.
- ⑥ Add pictures related to your blog. أضف صورًا ذات صلة بمدونتك.

Read and learn



Title

Celebrating Labor Day

الاحتفال بعيد العمال

Your name

By Fady

بواسطة فادي

Introduction

المقدمة

May 1, 2025

On May 1st, we celebrate Labor Day. It is a special day to honor workers and all the hard work they do. My family and I joined a small event in our neighborhood.

في الأول من مايو، نحتفل بعيد العمال. إنه يوم مميز لتكريم العمال وكل العمل الجاد الذي يقومون به. انضممت عائلتي وأنا إلى فعالية صغيرة في حيّنا.

Body with details

محتوى المدونة بالتفاصيل

We saw workers being thanked for their jobs. I made a colorful card to give to my father and teacher. Everyone enjoyed the celebrations and shared happy moments together.

رأينا العمال يتم شكرهم على أعمالهم. قُمت بصنع بطاقة ملونة لأهديها إلى أبي ومُعلّمي. استمتع الجميع بالاحتفالات وشاركوا اللحظات السعيدة معًا.

Conclusion

الخاتمة

I had a wonderful time celebrating Labor Day. Everyone should appreciate workers and their efforts every day!

لقد قضيت وقتًا رائعًا في الاحتفال بعيد العمال. يجب على الجميع تقدير العمال وجهودهم كل يوم!

Add a picture

أضف صورة





Write (T) True or (F) False:

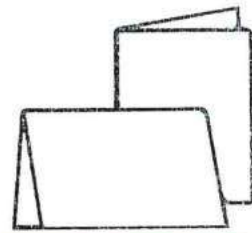
1. You don't need a title for your blog post. (.....)
2. The introduction should tell readers what the blog post is about. (.....)
3. You should write the body in one very long sentence. (.....)
4. Adding pictures can make a blog post more interesting. (.....)
5. You should never check your spelling before sharing a blog post. (.....)



Project

Thank You Card

بطاقة شكر



- ① Write a message (4 sentences) to your teacher saying why you appreciate them.

اكتب رسالة من أربع جمل إلى معلمك /
معلمتك تذكر فيها سبب تقديرك له / لها.

- ② Write "Thank you, Teacher", and decorate the front cover.

اكتب: "شكرًا لك، يا معلمي / معلمتي" وزين
الغلاف الأمامي.

Example:



Dear Mr. Galal, I wanted to express how much I appreciate your efforts in teaching this year. Your ability to explain difficult lessons clearly has helped me understand better. Thank you for making the classroom fun. I feel proud to be one of your students.

Thank you
TEACHER!

Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. On Labor Day, we celebrate and the hard work of workers.
a) honor b) add c) wave d) play
2. I made a colorful to give to my grandfather.
a) day b) job c) card d) school
3. Workers do a great every day at their jobs.
a) effort b) homework c) food d) playground
4. The school held a fun to celebrate Labor Day.
a) neighborhood b) home c) event d) card
5. Everyone enjoyed the happy at the school celebration.
a) together b) moment c) colorful d) job

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

celebration - efforts - neighborhood - happy - work

Labor Day is a special day to celebrate workers. I made a colorful card to honor the workers in my ① Everyone in the neighborhood joined the ②, sharing happiness and appreciation. We thanked people for their hard ③ and dedication. It was a wonderful day to honor everyone's ④

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

By Sarah October 6, 2025

On October 6th, we remember a very important day in our nation's history. It is a special time to honor the bravery and sacrifices of our heroes. My family and I watched a film about the historical events. We saw soldiers being brave and protecting our country. I felt a great sense of pride for everyone who fought. Everyone enjoyed remembering the sacrifices made by our soldiers. I had a wonderful time on the meaning of the day.

1. Sarah wrote about _____.

3. When did this event take place?

1. On may 1st we celebrate Labor Day

"A message to My Parents"



► love - help - support

Review on Unit 4

Main Vocabulary

exchange gifts	يتبادل الهدايا	clap	يُضَفِّق / تصفيق
play a game	يلعب لعبة	eat special food	يتناول طعام مميز
socialize with friends	يتواصل مع الأصدقاء	wrapped the giveaways	غَلَّف الهدايا التذكارية / التوزيعات
family gathering	تجمُّع عائلي	chess	شطرنج
oud	عود (آلة موسيقية)	perform music	يعزف موسيقى
wear special clothes	يرتدي ملابس خاصة	fireworks	ألعاب نارية
take photos	يلتقط صورًا	fences	أسوار
celebration	احتفال	birthday party	حفلة عيد ميلاد
school playground	ساحة المدرسة	candles	شموع
hang shiny ribbons	يعلِّق شرائط لامعة	cheerful	مبتهج / فرح
decorate	يزين المكان	guests	ضيوف
hide-and-seek	لعبة الغمضة (استغماية)	colorful card	بطاقة ملونة
Labor Day	عيد العمال	honor	يُكْرَم

Pronunciation



Suffix - Final -s sounds in plural

- We use plural forms of nouns when we are talking about more than one person, animal, thing, or object.

Example with people:



One friend



friend
(more than one)

Example with animals:

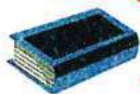


One cat



cat
(more than one)

Example with objects:



One book



book
(more than one)

Language in Use

○ Adjectives are words that describe nouns. They tell us what something looks, feels, sounds, or smells like.

▶ Describing people: tall, short, kind, friendly, happy

▶ Describing objects: big, small, colorful, shiny, soft

▶ Describing places: quiet, busy, peaceful, beautiful, crowded

▶ Describing feelings/events: exciting, fun, amazing, wonderful, boring



Dictation:

stage	أضواء
flag	مذهل / رائع
kindness	جميل
colorful	لامع
socialize	موسيقى
drum	يرتدي
around	حدث/فعالية
living room	مميز
balloons	مركز
party hat	لحظة
holidays	يغني
happy	جهد
part	آلة موسيقية
together	ضيوف
enormous	ضجر / ممل
exchange	يعلق
party	حي سكني
celebration	عمال

"A Wonderful Family Gathering"

Last weekend, our family had a wonderful gathering. We played many games together and laughed a lot. Everyone enjoyed delicious food. It was a happy and memorable day.

"A School Party"

Last Friday, our class had a fun party in the playground. Everyone wore special clothes and looked happy. We took many photos to remember the day. It was a wonderful celebration.

"A Cheerful Birthday Party"

Last Saturday, we celebrated my friend's birthday. Everyone felt happy and enjoyed the colorful cake. All the guests laughed, played games, and had a great time. It was a fun and joyful day.

"A Message to My Parents"

I appreciate your love because it makes me feel safe and happy. Thank you for always helping me with my schoolwork and daily tasks. I love you both very much!

"Photos, Fireworks, and Memories"

During the celebration, everyone felt happy. We enjoyed colorful fireworks and took many photos. I shared fun moments with my friends. It was an unforgettable day.

"Celebrating Labor Day"

On Labor Day, we joined a special event to honor hardworking workers. Everyone shared happiness, thanked the workers, and enjoyed the day. It was a meaningful and memorable celebration.

Test 9 on Unit 4

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

Total

40

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

1. Salma celebrated her birthday in the (school - garden - market).
2. She decorated the place with colorful balloons, shiny ribbons, and (bright lights - gift cards - flowers).
3. Salma wrapped giveaways for her friends to (hide - forget - share) her happiness.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (4Ms)

make - card - neighborhood - Wonderful

Nada : What did you do on Labor Day?

Fady : My family and I joined the celebrations in our ①

Nada : That sounds nice! Did you ② anything special?

Fady : Yes, I made a colorful ③ to honor the workers.

Nada : ④ ! We should appreciate workers every day.

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. Mona used her camera to (write a letter - clean the room - take photos) during the party.
2. Zein prepared snacks before the (guests - books - toys) arrived.
3. Sarah didn't finish her homework because she felt too (excited - lazy - polite).
4. The nurse was very (kind - angry - strong) to the children at the hospital. They loved her.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

(8Ms)

1. The party was bored and exciting.
2. The tree is red.
3. He felt happy when he lost his pencil.
4. She bought beauty flowers for the party

(.....)
(.....)
(.....)
(.....)

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

(10Ms)

The school playground looked beautiful during the celebration with colorful balloons and shiny lights everywhere. A band played music while students wore special clothes and enjoyed the fun. A large cake stood on a big table, and everyone played games and took photos. At night, fireworks lit up the sky, making it an unforgettable celebration.

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The school playground was decorated with colorful balloons and shiny lights.
2. The celebration ended quietly without any fireworks.

(.....)
(.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

3. The students wore (school uniforms - special clothes - winter jackets) during the celebration.
4. A large cake was placed on a (small chair - tiny plate - big table).
5. At night, (airplanes - fireworks - kites) lit up the sky.

8 Write a short paragraph of (4) sentences using the following guiding words:

(8Ms)

"Photos, Fireworks, and Memories"

celebration - happy - friends - colorful

Term 2

Test 10 on Unit 4

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

Total

30



(2Ms)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The students wore special clothes during the school celebration. (.....)
2. The students sat quietly without clapping when the music started. (.....)
3. Many students took photos of their friends and teachers. (.....)
4. Fireworks lit up the sky at night, making the day unforgettable. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3Ms)

1. The children play in the garden.
 a) hide-and-seek b) celebration c) neighborhood d) honor
2. Everyone enjoyed the fun and joy of the birthday
 a) clap b) clothes c) fireworks d) celebration
3. The dog jumped over the to run into the garden.
 a) cake b) fence c) moment d) play
4. The star on the cake is bright and
 a) busy b) quiet c) shiny d) helpful
5. The tree in the garden is very
 a) angry b) sad c) tall d) happy
6. Please be when the teacher is talking.
 a) quiet b) noisy c) shiny d) small

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

fireworks - wonderful - photos - school - friends

On our school's celebration day, everyone met in the school playground. We watched colorful ① in the sky and had fun with our ② Many students used their phones to take ③ of the event. Teachers made sure we stayed safe near the fences. It was a ④ day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(8Ms)

On Labor Day, our neighborhood had a special event to honor workers for the great job they do every day. Families gathered to watch the celebration, and everyone was happy. I made a colorful card to give to my father to thank him for his hard work. People clapped and smiled during the moment when workers were called on stage. It was a wonderful day filled with respect and joy.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. On Labor Day, our neighborhood had a special to honor workers.

- a) game b) event c) animal d) poster

2. I made a colorful to give to my father.

- a) book b) plant c) ball d) card

B Answer the following questions:

3. Why did the neighborhood have a special event on Labor Day?

▶

4. Who did the writer make a colorful card for?

▶

5. How did people show their happiness during the celebration?

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. Salma has a (kind) bag with bright colors.

2. I felt (sad) when I won the game.

3. I have a (color) kite that flies high in the sky.
4. She felt (excite) when she saw her friends at the park.



Punctuate the following:

(4Ms)

1. where did the celebration take place



2. we saw a tall tree in the garden



Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

(8Ms)

"Celebrating Labor Day"



► workers - event - honor

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

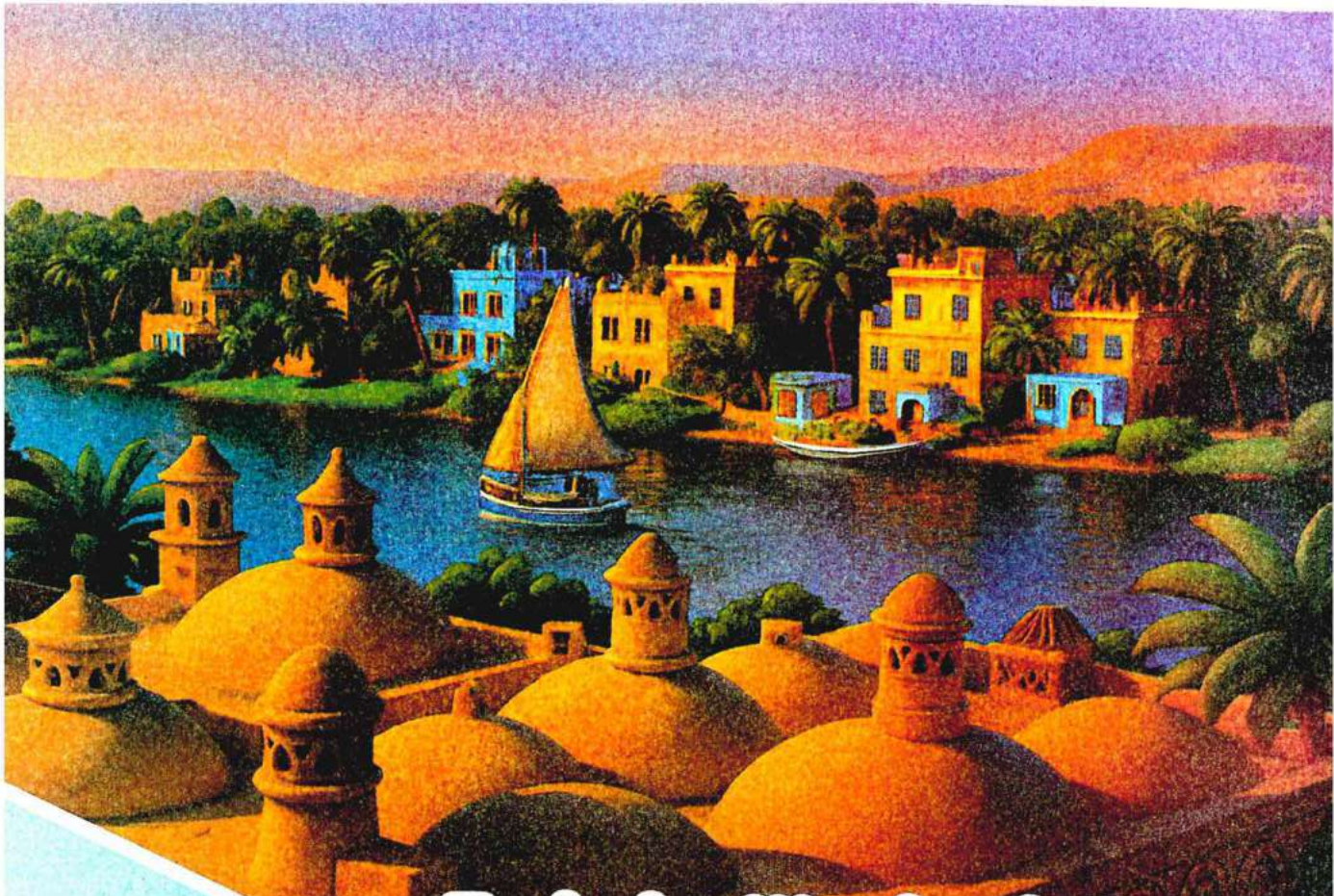
.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 5 Exploring Wonders in Egypt

استكشاف عجائب مصر

Learning Outcomes

Speaking

- Describe trips, holidays, and experiences using simple sentences
- Ask and answer questions about places, activities, and local life
- Give advice using should/shouldn't in short dialogs
- Pronounce oi/oy words correctly in speech

Listening

- Listen to short stories and dialogs about Egyptian places
- Identify key details such as locations, activities, and landmarks
- Understand advice using should/ shouldn't in context
- Recognize oi/oy sounds in spoken words

Reading

- Read short texts about places and identify the main idea
- Recognize vocabulary related to trips, holidays, and sightseeing
- Identify should/shouldn't in written advice texts
- Understand the structure of postcards, including greeting, body, and closing

Writing

- Write short sentences or paragraphs about trips or holidays
- Compose advice sentences using should/shouldn't
- Complete spelling activities with oi/oy words
- Write a short postcard including greeting, body, and closing
- Create a mind map about exciting places in Egypt

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



journey

رحلة



water springs

ينابيع ماء



Bedouins

البدو



tents

خيام



traditional life

حياة تقليدية



palm trees

أشجار نخيل

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

desert

صحراء

visitor

زائر

tourist

سائح

generation

جيل

Moses

موسى (عليه السلام)

South Sinai

جنوب سيناء

during

أثناء

through

عبر

around

حول

wonder

أعجوبة/معجزة

site

موقع

northern Egypt

شمال مصر

culture

ثقافة

fishermen

صيادون

Adjectives

صفات

beautiful	جميل	fresh	عذب
clean	نظيف	quiet	هادئ
local	محلي	interesting	شيق
natural	طبيعي	traditional	تقليدي
important	مهم	historical	تاريخي

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات و حروف جر

historical site	موقع تاريخي	natural wonder	معجزة طبيعية
It is called...	تسمى...	under the stars	تحت النجوم
Long ago,...	منذ وقت طويل...	passed down	توارث / تناقل عبر الأجيال
take photos	يأخذ صور	learn about	يتعلم عن

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
call	يُسمي	called		learn	يتعلم	learned/learnt	
photograph	يصور	photographed		locate	يحدد مكان / يجد	located	
follow	يتبع	followed		plant	يزرع	planted	
pass	يمر / ينتقل	passed		consider	يعتبر	considered	

Present		Past		Present		Past	
see	يرى	saw		take	يأخذ	took	
drink	يشرب	drank		meet	يلتقي / يقابل	met	
sleep	ينام	slept		build	يبني	built	
come	يأتي	came		think	يفكر	thought	



Read and learn

Oyoun Mousa

عيون موسى



Oyoun Mousa, also called Moses Springs, is a beautiful place in South Sinai, Egypt. It has fresh **water springs** and tall palm trees. Long ago, Moses and the people drank water from these springs during their journey through the desert.

”عيون موسى، وتُسمى أيضاً ينابيع موسى، هي مكان جميل يقع في جنوب سيناء بمصر. تحتوي على ينابيع مياه عذبة وأشجار نخيل طويلة. فمُنذ زمن بعيد، شرب موسى (عليه السلام) وقومه من مياه هذه الينابيع أثناء رحلتهم في الصحراء.

Today, many visitors come to enjoy the clean water and the quiet desert around it. You can take photos, walk near the springs, and learn about the interesting history of the place. Some visitors also meet local **Bedouins**, see their **tents**, and learn about their traditional life. Oyoun Mousa is not only a **natural wonder** but also an important historical site for everyone. واليوم يأتي لها العديد من الزوار للاستمتاع بالمياه النقية والصحراء الهادئة المحيطة بها. ويمكنك التقاط الصور والمشي بالقرب من الينابيع، والتعرف على التاريخ المثير لهذا المكان. أيضاً يلتقي بعض الزائرين بالبدو المحليين، ويرون خيامهم كذلك، ويتعلمون عن حياتهم التقليدية. عيون موسى ليست فقط أعجوبة طبيعية، بل أيضاً موقعاً تاريخياً مهماً للجميع.



Write (T) true or (F) false:

1. Oyoun Mousa is also called Moses Springs. ()
2. The springs are located in northern Egypt. ()
3. Visitors can take photos and walk near the springs. ()
4. Bedouins live in houses made of bricks near the springs. ()
5. Oyoun Mousa is an important historical site. ()

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Oyoun Mousa has fresh water
 a) tents b) springs c) Bedouins d) buildings
2. The people of the desert are called Bedouins.
 a) local b) sick c) young d) old
3. Visitors can photos at Oyoun Mousa.
 a) drink b) take c) learn d) wear
4. Oyoun Mousa is an important site.
 a) historical b) boring c) new d) small
5. Bedouins often live in in the desert.
 a) hospitals b) schools c) tents d) offices
6. Oyoun Mousa located is located in
 a) North Sinai b) Western Desert c) South Sinai d) Nile Delta
7. Last summer, we went on a long across the desert.
 a) Bedouins b) traditional life c) tents d) journey
8. My grandfather belongs to an older of our family.
 a) tradition b) generation c) journey d) society

Unit 5

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

enjoy - learn - take - drink - eat

Many people visit Oyoun Mousa every year. They **①** the beautiful nature and quiet desert. They can **②** from the fresh springs and **③** many photos. They also **④** about the interesting history of the place and the traditional life of the Bedouins.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

place - local - historical - located - mean

Ms. Hala : Today, we will learn about Oyoun Mousa.

Sara : What does "Oyoun Mousa" **①**, Ms. Hala?

Ms. Hala : It means "Moses Springs."

Ali : Where is it **②**?

Ms. Hala : It is in South Sinai.

Omar : Are there any people living?

Ms. Hala : Yes, the **③** Bedouins.

Ms. Hala : It is a natural wonder and a **④** site!

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Oyoun Mousa, is not only beautiful but also full of history. Long ago, it helped people on a difficult journey by giving them water. Today, it helps us learn about the past. Visitors can see how water can create life in the desert. They can also meet the Bedouins and learn how people lived in the desert for thousands of years. This makes Oyoun Mousa a place for both learning and enjoyment.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Oyoun Mousa is special because it is .

a) new and modern

b) beautiful and historical

c) small and quiet

d) big and noisy

2. Long ago, the springs helped people by giving them

- a) water b) food c) money d) clothes

B Answer the following questions:

3. What can visitors learn from the Bedouins?

▶

4. Why is Oyoun Mousa a place for learning?

▶

5. What made Oyoun Mousa important for travelers long ago?

▶

5 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. place - South Sinai - Oyoun Mousa - is - in - a beautiful.

▶

2. water - from - the - drank - springs - Moses.

▶

3. Bedouins - of - learn - Some - visitors - about - the life.

▶

4. site - Mousa - is - a - Oyoun - historical.

▶

6 Punctuate the following:

1. where can we see Oyoun Mousa

▶

2. visitors can enjoy the quiet desert

▶

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"Oyoun Mousa"

▶ **Where is it?** ▶ **What is in it?** ▶ **What can visitors do there?**

.....
.....



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

Activities
أنشطة

hiking

المشي لمسافات طويلة



scuba diving

الغوص العميق (الغوص باستخدام الأسطوانة)



starfish

نجم البحر



horseback riding

ركوب الخيل



snorkeling

الغطس السطحي (الغطس باستخدام الأنبوب)



corals

الشعاب المرجانية

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

mid-year

منتصف العام

vacation

إجازة

holiday

عطلة / عطلة رسمية

beach

شاطئ

mountains

جبال

definitely

بالتأكيد

crab

سرطان البحر

camping

التخييم

jellyfish

قنديل البحر

trail ممر أو طريق للمشبي في الطبيعة

fishing

صيد السمك

sunscreen

واقبي الشمس

cycling

ركوب الدراجة

adventure

مغامرة

Adjectives

صفات

wonderful	رائع	calm (sea)	هادئ (البحر)
colorful	ملون	strong	قوي
amazing	مذهل	living	حية
sharp	حاد	heavy	ثقيل
dangerous	خطير	comfortable	مريح

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات و حروف جر

mid-year vacation	إجازة مُنْتَصَفِ الْعَامِ	That sounds fun!	يبدو ذلك ممتعاً!
It was wonderful!	كانت رائعة!	That sounds amazing!	ذلك يبدو مذهلاً!
with my family	مع عائلتي	What else?	مَاذَا أَيْضًا؟
go scuba diving	يذهب للغوص تحت الماء	You're right!	أنتِ محق!
go snorkeling	يذهب للغطس السطحي	in the mountains	في الجبال
go hiking	يتجول سيرا في الطبيعة / يمشي في الجبال	by the beach	بجانب الشاطئ
go horseback riding	يَرْكَبُ الدَّيْل	You definitely should!	بالتأكيد يجب عليك ذلك!

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
try	يحاول / يجرب	tried		look	ينظر	looked	
touch	يلمس	touched		pick up	يلتقط	picked up	
stay	يبقى	stayed		sound	يبدو	sounded	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
spend	يقضي	spent		eat	يأكل	ate	
run	يجري	ran		go	يذهب	went	
tell	يخبر	told		wear	يرتدي	wore	



Read and learn

A Wonderful Vacation in Dahab

إجازة رائعة في دهب



Karima : Hi Salma! How was your mid-year vacation?

كريمة : مرحبًا سلمى! كيف كانت إجازتك في منتصف العام؟

Salma : It was wonderful! I spent my holiday in Dahab with my family.
سلمى : كانت رائعة! قضيت عطلي في دهب مع عائلتي.

Karima : Wow! What did you do there?

كريمة : واو! ماذا فعلتم هناك؟

Salma : We went **scuba diving** and saw many **starfish**. You should really try it one day!

سلمى : مارسنا الغوص ورأينا الكثير من نجوم البحر. يجب عليك حقًا تجربته يومًا ما!

Karima : That sounds fun! Did you go **snorkeling** too?

كريمة : يبدو ذلك ممتعًا! هل ذهبتُم للغطس أيضًا؟

Salma : Yes, and I saw **corals**. You shouldn't touch them. Because they are living sea animals.

سلمى : نعم، ورأيت شعابًا مرجانية. لا يجب عليك لمسها. لأنها كائنات بحرية حية.

Karima : You're right! What else did you do?

كريمة : أنت محقة! ماذا فعلتم أيضًا؟

Salma : We went **hiking** in the mountains and **horseback riding** by the beach.

سلمى : ذهبنا للتنزه سيراً على الأقدام في الجبال وركوب الخيل بجانب الشاطئ.

Karima : That sounds amazing! I should visit Dahab next vacation!

كريمة : هذا يبدو مذهلاً! يجب أن أزور دهب في العطلة القادمة!

Salma : You definitely should!

سلمى : بالتأكيد يجب عليك ذلك!

Circle the correct answer:



Student's Book

1. What did Salma see while she was scuba diving?

- a) dolphins b) corals c) crabs d) jellyfish

2. Why did Salma say people shouldn't touch corals?

- a) because they are sharp
b) because they are living sea animals
c) because they are dangerous
d) because they are heavy

3. What activities did Salma do on land?

- a) hiking and horseback riding b) snorkeling and swimming
c) running and camping d) fishing and cycling

GRAMMAR STUDY



"Should" and "Shouldn't"

● should يجب أن ● shouldn't يجب أن لا

● Use **should/shouldn't** to give advice or to say what is a good or bad.

نستخدم **should/shouldn't** لإعطاء نصيحة أو لقول أن شيئاً ما جيد أو سيئ.

Examples:

▶ You **should** drink more water.

▶ You **shouldn't** sleep late.

Affirmative:

الإثبات:

Subject + should + base verb

Example:

▶ You should try scuba diving.

Negative:

التنفي:

Subject + should not (shouldn't) + base verb

Example:

▶ You shouldn't touch the corals.

Question:

السؤال:

Should + subject + base verb?

Example:

▶ Should I wear a hat?

⇒ Yes, you should.

⇒ No, you shouldn't.

Circle the correct answer:

Student's
Book

- You see beautiful starfish while snorkeling. What should you do?

a) You should touch them.	b) You shouldn't touch them.
c) You should pick them up.	d) You shouldn't look at them.
- The sun is very strong in Dahab. What should you do?

a) You should wear sunscreen and a hat.	b) You should stay indoors all day.
c) You shouldn't drink water.	d) You shouldn't use sunglasses.

3. The sea is calm and clear. What should you do?
 a) You should go scuba diving. b) You should wear a jacket.
 c) You shouldn't swim. d) You shouldn't enjoy the beach.
4. The weather is cold and windy. What shouldn't you do?
 a) You shouldn't wear shorts. b) You should go swimming.
 c) You should eat ice cream. d) You shouldn't wear a jacket.
5. You are going hiking in the mountains. What should you do?
 a) You should wear comfortable shoes.
 b) You shouldn't take any water.
 c) You should run fast. d) You shouldn't tell anyone.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We went in the sea and saw many fish.
 a) hiking b) riding c) snorkeling d) corals
2. Last summer, I tried and it was very exciting!
 a) scuba diving b) starfish c) dolphin d) corals
3. Look at the on the beach! They are so colorful.
 a) books b) starfish c) visitors d) sunscreen
4. We went along the mountain trail yesterday.
 a) shopping b) park c) diving d) hiking
5. Don't touch the in the sea because they are living animals.
 a) corals b) ball c) game d) riding
6. Salma went by the beach on a horse.
 a) hiking b) snorkeling
 c) horseback riding d) scuba diving
7. I try snorkeling in Dahab to see the beautiful fish?
 a) Shouldn't b) Aren't c) Should d) Can't

8. The weather is perfect. We go hiking in the mountains.
 a) should b) don't c) shouldn't d) aren't
9. You wear comfortable shoes for a long walk.
 a) shouldn't b) can't c) aren't d) should
10. You are very tired. You go to bed late.
 a) should b) are c) can d) shouldn't

2

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

corals - scuba diving - horseback riding - hiking - going

My family and I went to Dahab last vacation. We did many fun activities. First, we went ① in the deep sea and saw many wonderful fish and ② We shouldn't touch them. Then, we went ③ by the beach and the horse was beautiful. We also went ④ in the high mountains. It was a wonderful trip.

3

Read the text and answer the questions:

Salma's mid-year vacation was wonderful! She spent her holiday in Dahab with her family. They went scuba diving and saw many starfish. They also went snorkeling and saw corals. Salma reminded everyone that they shouldn't touch the corals because they are living sea animals. For activities on land, they went hiking in the mountains and horseback riding by the beach. Salma thinks everyone should visit Dahab next vacation! It was the best vacation ever.

A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Salma spent her mid-year holiday in
 a) The mountains b) Hurghada
 c) Nuweiba d) Dahab
2. Salma and her family saw when they went scuba diving.
 a) dolphins b) horses c) starfish d) sand

B Answer the following questions:

3. Why shouldn't people touch the corals?
4. What two activities did Salma and her family do on land?
5. What is the main idea of this text?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. your - vacation - **How** - mid-year - was?

▶ ?

2. hiking - went - in - **We** - the - mountains.

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. You should (**trying**) snorkeling with your friends.
2. She (**shouldn't**) eat more fruits and vegetables.
3. He (**should**) sleep late everyday.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. What did you do in dahab

▶

2. we went hiking in the mountains

▶

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"My Perfect Vacation"

▶ **snorkeling - enjoy - beach**

.....

.....

.....

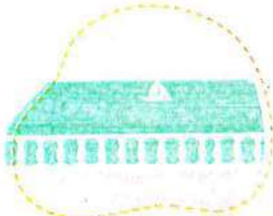
.....

Lesson 3 A Day Between Two Ports



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



corniche

كورنيش



Suez Canal

قناة السويس



ferry

عبّارة



seagull

طائر النورس



breeze

نسيم



shore

شاطئ

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

Port Said

بورسعيد

Port Fouad

بورفؤاد

trip

رحلة

along

على امتداد

point

نقطة

above

فوق/أعلى

ride(n.)

جولة/ركوب

view

منظر - إطلالة

seafood

طعام بحري

Adjectives

صفات

quiet

هادئ

exciting

مثير

cool

لطيف

cheerful

مبهج

tasty

لذيذ

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات و حروف جر

along the Corniche

على امتداد الكورنيش

across the canal

عبر القناة

take pictures

يلتقط صورًا

quiet streets

شوارع هادئة

tasty seafood

طعام بحري لذيذ

sea view

منظر البحر

by the shore

بجانب الشاطئ

a memorable trip

رحلة لا تُنسى

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

arrive

يصل

arrived

sail

يبحر

sailed

start

يبدأ

started

laugh

يضحك

laughed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

begin

يبدأ

began

fly

يطير

flew

eat

يأكل

ate

ride

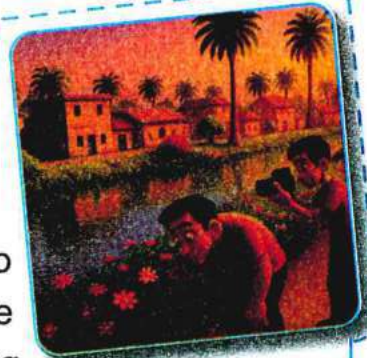
يركب

rode

Read and learn

A Fun Day in Port Said and Port Fouad

يوم ممتع مابين بورسعيد وبورفؤاد



Term 2

Last weekend, my family and I started our trip to **Port Said** early in the morning. When we arrived, we walked along the **Corniche** and watched ships sailing near the point where the **Suez Canal** begins. The boys were laughing and taking pictures while **seagulls** flew above them, making cheerful noise.

في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الماضية، بدأت عائلتي وأنا رحلتنا إلى بورسعيد في وقت مبكر من الصباح. عندما وصلنا، مشينا على طول الكورنيش وشاهدنا السفن تبحر بالقرب من النقطة التي تبدأ عندها قناة السويس. كان الأولاد يضحكون ويلتقطون الصور بينما كانت النوارس تحلق فوقهم، مُحَدِّثَةً ضوضاء مبهجة.

After that, we took the **ferry** across the canal to **Port Fouad**. The ride was short but very exciting. In Port Fouad, we enjoyed the quiet streets, the cool breeze, and the beautiful sea view. Before going home, we ate tasty seafood by the shore. It was a joyful and **memorable** trip.

بعد ذلك، أخذنا العبارة عبر القناة إلى بورفؤاد. كانت الرحلة قصيرة ولكنها مثيرة جدًا. في بورفؤاد، استمتعنا بالشوارع الهادئة والنسيم اللطيف ومنظر البحر الجميل. قبل العودة إلى البيت، أكلنا مأكولات بحرية لذيذة عند الشاطئ. لقد كانت رحلة مبهجة ولا تُنسى.

Read again and answer:



A. Circle the correct answer

- What did they see when they walked along the Corniche?

a) Cars and buses	b) People swimming
c) Fishermen catching fish	d) Ships sailing near the Suez Canal
- How did the family cross the canal to Port Fouad?

a) By car	b) By bridge	c) By ferry	d) By bus
-----------	--------------	-------------	-----------
- What did the family enjoy in Port Fouad?

a) The busy streets	b) The cool breeze and sea view
c) The big buildings	d) The market

B. Answer the following questions

- Why do you think the family enjoyed their trip to Port Said and Port Fouad?



- If you visited Port Said and Port Fouad, what activities would you like to try, and why?



Pronunciation



Words with "oi" and "oy" Sounds

Both "oi" and "oy" say the same sound.

كل من "oi" و "oy" يصدران نفس الصوت.

We use "oi" usually in the middle of a word.

نستخدم "oi" عادة في منتصف الكلمة.

Examples:



oi



coin



boil



point



noise

We use "oy" usually at the end of a word.

نستخدم "oy" عادة في نهاية الكلمة.

Examples:



oy



boy



toy



enjoy



joy

Look at the picture and fill in the missing letters:



Student's Book



c _ _ n



t _ _



s _ _ l



j _ y



p _ _ nt

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We walked along the to see the sea.
 a) library b) corniche c) home d) train
2. A flew over the beach looking for food.
 a) point b) seafood c) seagull d) sea
3. We stood on the and watched the waves reach the sand.
 a) school b) bus c) market d) shore
4. The ferry took us across the
 a) canal b) breeze c) boat d) waves
5. I felt a cool while walking near the sea.
 a) house b) street c) breeze d) fire
6. The boys were pictures during the trip.
 a) playing b) taking c) eating d) visiting

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

ferry - seagulls - breeze - memorable - Corniche

We visited Port Said and had a wonderful day by the sea. We walked along the ① and saw many ships. The cool ② from the sea was wonderful. We saw the white ③ flying over the water. We took a ④ to Port Fouad, and it was the first time to ride it. It was a memorable trip.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Our day in Port Said was wonderful. First, we arrived at the train station. Then, we went to the Suez Canal. We saw giant ships moving slowly through the water. My brother pointed at them and laughed. After that, we walked on the corniche, the weather was perfect, with a cool breeze. We took many photos of the seagulls and the beautiful view. For lunch, we ate delicious seafood by the shore. I will never forget this memorable day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The family traveled to Port Said by
 a) car b) bus c) train d) plane
2. They saw on the Suez Canal.
 a) small boats b) people swimming c) dolphins d) giant ships

B Answer the following questions:

3. What did they do on the corniche?
4. Where did they have lunch?
5. How was the weather in Port Said?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. the ships - **We** - near - watched - sailing - the canal. ►
2. was - ride - short - but - **The** - exciting. ►
3. tasty - ate - shore - **We** - by - seafood - the. ►
4. a joyful - was - **It** - and - trip - memorable. ►

5 Punctuate the following:

1. We took the ferry to port foudad. ►
2. did you enjoy the seafood by the shore ►

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"A Memorable Trip"

► **shore - seafood - corniche**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



postcard

بطاقة بريدية



Blue Hole

الثقبة الزرقاء (حفرة غوص)



peaceful

هادئ / ساحر



adventure

مغامرة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

wonderful

رائع

even

حتى

perfect

رائع / مثالي

full of

مليء بـ

around

حول

moment

لحظة

pool

حمام سباحة

tourist

سائح

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

I had a wonderful time.

قضيت وقتاً رائعاً.

full of adventure

مليء بالمغامرة

You should visit...

يجب أن تزور...

I enjoyed every moment.

استمتعت بكل لحظة.

The place looks amazing.

المكان يبدو مذهلاً.

Wish you were here!

أتمنى لو كنت هنا!

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

spot

يرصد / يرى

spotted

invite

يدعو

invited

look

يبدو

looked

wish

يتمنى

wished

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
see يرى	saw	have يقضي (وقت)	had



Read and learn

A Postcard from Dahab

بطاقة بريدية من دهب



Hello from Dahab!

I had a wonderful time at the Blue Hole. The water is very clear and perfect for snorkeling.

I saw many colorful fish and beautiful corals. The mountains around the pools make the place look amazing. I even spotted a big starfish! You should visit the "Blue Hole" because it is fun, peaceful, and full of adventure. I enjoyed every moment here!

Wish you were here!

Your friend,

Hany

مرحبًا من دهب!

لقد قضيت وقتًا رائعًا في "بلو هول" الثقبه الزرقاء. الماء صافي جدًا ومثالي للغوص. لقد رأيت العديد من الأسماك الملونة وشعابًا مرجانية جميلة. الجبال المحيطة بالبرك تجعل المكان يبدو مذهلاً. لقد رأيت حتى نجم بحر كبير! يجب أن تزور "بلو هول" الثقبه الزرقاء لأنها ممتعة وهادئة ومليئة بالمغامرة. لقد استمتعت بكل لحظة هنا!

أتمنى لو كنت هنا!

صديقك،

هاني



Writing Notes:

Writing a postcard

كتابة بطاقة بريدية

The Message Area (Left Side):

منطقة الرسالة (الجانب الأيسر)

1 Start with a simple greeting.

ابدأ بتحية بسيطة:

Example: ► Hello from Dahab!2 Write **two or more sentences** about where you are or what you are doing. Use descriptive words (**e.g., wonderful, clear, perfect, colorful**).اكتب **جملتين أو أكثر** حول مكان تواجدك أو ما تفعله. استخدم بعض الصفات**Example:** ► I had a wonderful time at the Blue Hole. The water is very clear and perfect for snorkeling. I saw many colorful fish and beautiful corals.

3 End with a simple sentence and closing like "Love," or "Your friend," followed by your name.

اختتم بجملته بسيطة وبتوقيع بسيط مثل "مع حبي"، أو "صديقك/صديقتك"، متبوعاً باسمك.

Example: ► Wish you were here!
Your friend,
Hany

The Address Area (Right Side):

منطقة العنوان (الجانب الأيمن)

1 Write the name of the person receiving the card on the first line.

اكتب اسم الشخص الذي سيتلقى البطاقة في السطر الأول.

Example: ► Full Name: Mostafa Ahmed

2 Write the city and country on the lines below.

اكتب المدينة والدولة في السطور أدناه.

Example: ► Country: Cairo, Egypt

Now it's your turn! Create a postcard about your trip to Oyoun Mousa to invite your friend to come visit soon



Postcard template with a decorative border of red, green, and black diagonal stripes. The template includes a large rectangular area for a drawing on the left and a smaller area on the right for a stamp and postmark. Below the stamp area, there are two lines for text: "Full Name : ..." and "Country : ...".



Project

Mind Map!

خريطة ذهنية!

It's like a thinking tree!

هي مثل شجرة تفكير

● In the center:

▶ "Exciting Places in Egypt"

● Three branches:

- Oyoun Mousa
- Dahab
- Port Said

● What should we do?

We need to write activities or facts about each site!

في المنتصف:

"أماكن مثيرة"

ثلاث فروع:

عيون موسى

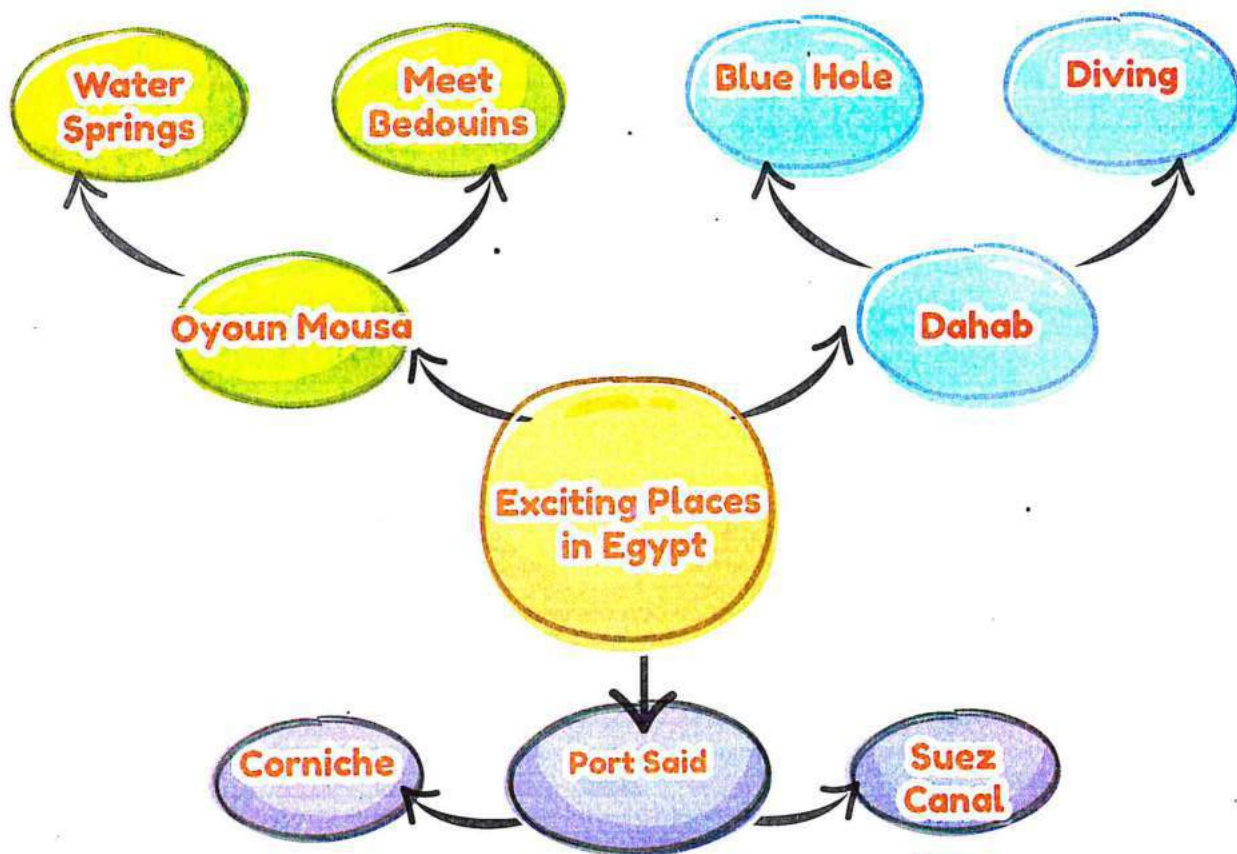
دهب

بورسعيد

ما الذي يجب ان نفعله؟

نحتاج الى ان نكتب أنشطة أو حقائق عن كل مكان!

Mind Map: write the activities or facts about each site



Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

spotted - adventure - snorkeling - amazing - starfish

Hany sent a postcard from Dahab. He wrote about his ^① time at the Blue Hole. He went ^② and saw a big ^③. He said that the place is full of ^④. He enjoyed every moment there!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I had a ... time in Dahab. I enjoyed it very much.
 a) terrible b) wonderful c) sad d) boring

2. The water at the Blue Hole is very It's easy to see through.
 a) dark b) cold c) dark d) clear
3. Hany saw many fish and corals. They have many colors.
 a) colorless b) small c) colorful d) dangerous
4. The mountains make the place look and great.
 a) ordinary b) amazing c) ugly d) small
5. He a big starfish under the water.
 a) bought b) drew c) made d) spotted

Punctuate the following:

1. i had a wonderful time in dahab.
 ►
2. You should visit the blue hole.
 ►
3. did you see the colorful fish and corals
 ►

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. many - I - fish - saw - colorful - corals - and.
 ►
2. spotted - I - big - very - a - starfish!
 ► !

Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

"Your Favorite Place"

► enjoy - natural pools - swim

Review on Unit 5

Main Vocabulary

Bedouins	البدو	corals	الشعاب المرجانية
journey	رحلة	corniche	كورنيش
water springs	ينابيع ماء	Suez Canal	قناة السويس
palm trees	أشجار نخيل	ferry	عبارة
tents	خيام	seagull	طائر النورس
traditional life	حياة تقليدية	breeze	نسيم
	لمسافات المشي	shore	شاطئ
hiking	طويلة	postcard	بطاقة بريدية
scuba diving	الغوص العميق	Blue Hole	الثقبة الزرقاء
starfish	نجم البحر	peaceful	هادئ / سحر
horseback riding	ركوب الخيل	adventure	مغامرة
snorkeling	الغطس السطحي		

Pronunciation



Words with "oi" and "oy" Sounds

- Both "oi" and "oy" say the same sound. كل من "oi" و "oy" يصدران نفس الصوت.
- We use "oi" usually in the **middle** of a word. نستخدم "oi" عادة في منتصف الكلمة.
- We use "oy" usually at the **end** of a word. نستخدم "oy" عادة في منتصف الكلمة.

coin boil boy toy

Examples:



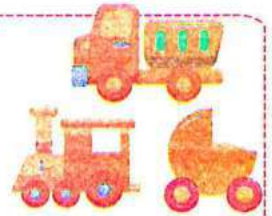
coin



boil



boy



toy

Language in Use



"Should" and "Shouldn't"

● **should**

يجب أن

● **shouldn't**

يجب أن لا

● **Affirmative:** الإثبات:

Example: ▶ You **should** try scuba diving.

● **Question:** السؤال:

Example: ▶ **Should** I wear a hat?

● **Negative:** النفي:

Example: ▶ You **shouldn't** touch the corals.

Yes, you **should**. No, you **shouldn't**

Dictation:

Bedouins

أشجار نخيل

water

حياة تقليدية

springs

الغوص العميق

tents

ركوب الخيل

hiking

الشعاب المرجانية

starfish

قناة السويس

snorkeling

طائر النورس

corniche

شاطئ

ferry

مغامرة

breeze

طعام بحري

postcard

هادئ

Term 2

Writing Skills Unit 5

"Oyoun Mousa"

Oyoun Mousa, is a beautiful place in South Sinai. It has fresh water springs and tall palm trees. Visitors come to enjoy the clean water and the quiet desert. They also meet local Bedouins and learn about their life.

"My Perfect Vacation"

My perfect vacation is in Dahab. I go to the beach and enjoy swimming. Then, I go snorkeling near the beautiful corals. It's the best way to enjoy the colorful fish and the clear blue water.

"A Memorable Trip"

We had a memorable trip to Alexandria. We spent the afternoon on the corniche. We enjoyed the sea view and the fresh air. Then, we relaxed by the shore and had dinner. We enjoyed the seafood.

"Your Favorite Place"

My favorite place to visit is Sinai. I enjoy the beautiful quiet desert. My best place is the natural pools between the rocks. I love to hike and swim in the cool water there.

"Your Vacation at Port Said"

We had a lovely vacation in Port Said. We spent time walking along the beach. We watched the seagulls flying over the water. We visited the local market. There, we bought fresh fish to cook for dinner.

"A Day at the Blue Hole"

Our day at the famous Blue Hole was amazing. We started snorkeling in the deep water. We saw the colorful corals and bright fish swimming around us. We spotted a huge orange starfish peacefully on a rock.

Test 11 on Unit 5

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

Total

40

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

- Oyoun Mousa is also called (Moses Springs - Nile River - Red Sea).
- Visitors enjoy the fresh water, tall palm trees, and quiet (school - hospital - desert).
- People can learn about local (Bedouin - farmers - fishermen) life at Oyoun Mousa.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (4Ms)

snorkeling - corals - starfish - hiking

Sama: Hi, Soha! How was your vacation?

Soha: It was wonderful! I spent my vacation in Sharm El-Sheikh with my family.

Sama: Wow! What did you do there?

Soha: We went scuba diving and saw many ① You should try it one day!

Sama: That sounds fun! Did you go ② too?

Soha: Yes, and I saw ③ You shouldn't touch them.

Sama: What else did you do?

Soha: We went ④ in the mountains and horseback riding by the beach.

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

- My sister enjoyed (hiking - horseback riding - snorkeling) along the beach on a brown horse.
- Visitors can meet local Bedouins and learn about their (traditional life - modern city - technology)
- You (should - shouldn't - mustn't) wear a hat when the sun is hot.
- People shouldn't (goes - going - go) snorkeling now because the sea is rough.

Term 2

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

(8Ms)

1. You shouldn't sleep early every night. (.....)
2. She shouldn't eats too much candy. (.....)
3. Should I wearing a jacket in winter? (.....)
4. We shouldn't to touch the corals in the sea. (.....)

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

(10Ms)

Hello, my name is Jana. I had a wonderful time at the Blue Hole. The water is clear and perfect for snorkeling. I saw colorful fish, beautiful corals, and even a big starfish. The mountains around the pools are amazing. You should visit-it is fun, peaceful, and full of adventure.

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Jana didn't see any colorful fish while snorkeling at the Blue Hole. (.....)
2. The Blue Hole is surrounded by mountains. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

3. Jana had a wonderful time at the (Pyramids - Blue Hole - High dam).
4. The water is (clear - dirty - shallow) and perfect for snorkeling.
5. Jana saw a big (shark - octopus - starfish).

6 Write a short paragraph of (4) sentences using the following guiding words:

(8Ms)

"Your Vacation at Port Said"



► beach - seagulls - fish - market

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 12 on Unit 5

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

Total

30



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. The family walked along the Corniche in Port Said. (.....)
2. They watched cars racing near the Suez Canal. (.....)
3. Seagulls flew above while the boys laughed and took photos. (.....)
4. They visited the local market and tasted delicious seafood. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3Ms)

1. Many tourists like in the sea to see fish and corals.
 a) running b) snorkeling c) hiking d) horseback riding
2. The tourists slept in small under the stars.
 a) pools b) villas c) springs d) tents
3. They took the across the canal to Port Fouad.
 a) car b) train c) ferry d) plane
4. The sun is very hot. You wear sunscreen to protect your skin.
 a) should b) shouldn't c) can't d) mustn't
5. Should I take pictures of the corals? - Yes,
 a) you shouldn't b) shouldn't you c) you should d) should you
6. You are feeling tired. You should some rest before hiking.
 a) takes b) took c) taking d) take

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

memorable - breeze - ferry - streets - seafood

Last week, our class went on a school trip to Port Fouad. First, we took the ① across the canal. We walked along the quiet streets and enjoyed the cool ② by the sea. Before going home, we ate delicious ③ near the shore. It was a ④ and joyful trip.

Term 2

4**Read the text and answer the questions:****(8Ms)**

Hello, my name is Manar. Last vacation, I went to Dahab with my family. We tried scuba diving and saw many colorful starfish. We also went snorkeling and admired the corals, but we didn't touch them because they are living animals. We enjoyed hiking in the mountains and horseback riding along the beach. The weather was perfect, and the scenery was beautiful. I had a wonderful time.

A**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- Manar went on vacation to with her family.
a) Hurghada b) Dahab c) Cairo d) Alexandria
- They tried scuba diving and saw many colorful
a) snakes b) dolphins c) starfish d) jellyfish

B**Answer the following questions:**

- What is the general idea of the text?
▶
- What activities did Manar do during her vacation in Dahab?
▶
- Why shouldn't they touch the corals?
▶

5**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:****(4Ms)**

- You should (**finished**) your homework tonight.
- They (**should**) run near the swimming pool.
- You (**shouldn't**) drink water when you are thirsty.
- Should we (**goes**) hiking in the mountains?

6 Punctuate the following:

(4Ms)

1. What activities did salma do on land

▶

2. Oyoun mousa is a beautiful place in South Sinai

▶

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

(8Ms)

"A Day at the Blue Hole"

▶ **snorkeling - corals - starfish**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review 2 | On Units 4-5



Test 13 based on units 4 - 5

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

1. Zein celebrated his birthday on (Tuesday - Friday - Sunday).
2. Zein decorated the living room with colorful (flowers - ribbons - balloons).
3. The cake was baked by Zein's (father - mother - aunt).

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (4Ms)

local - historical - located - mean

Ms. Hala: Today, we will learn about Oyoun Mousa.

Sara: What does "Oyoun Mousa" ① _____, Ms. Hala?

Ms. Hala: It means "Moses Springs."

Ali: Where is it ② _____?

Ms. Hala: It is in South Sinai.

Omar: Are there any people living?

Ms. Hala: Yes, the ③ _____ Bedouins.

Ms. Hala: It is a natural wonder and a ④ _____ site!

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. The nurse was very (kind - angry - sleepy - strong) to the children at the hospital. They loved her.
2. Oyoun Mousa has fresh water (tents - springs - Bedouins - buildings).
3. The sun is very strong. You (shouldn't - don't - can't - should) wear a hat.
4. The (local - sick - young - old) people of the desert are called Bedouins.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

(8Ms)

1. We shouldn't to touch the hot stove. (.....)
2. The nurse was very angry. We loved her. (.....)
3. Should I cleaning my bedroom? (.....)
4. Omar felt happy when he lost his pencil case. (.....)

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

(10Ms)

My family and I went to Dahab last vacation. We did many fun activities. First, we went diving in the deep sea and saw many beautiful fishes. Then, we went snorkeling near the shore and saw many sea corals and starfish. You shouldn't touch them! We also went hiking in the high mountains. It was a wonderful trip.

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The family only did sea activities, like diving and snorkeling. (.....)
2. The narrator advised that people should avoid touching sea corals. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

3. The family went to (snorkeling - hiking - Dahab) for their vacation.
4. The first activity was (hiking - diving - fishing).
5. They went (diving - snorkeling - hiking) in the high mountains.

6 Write a short paragraph of (4) sentences using the following guiding words: (8Ms)

"Life in the desert"

► quiet - springs - Bedouins - traditional

Test 14 based on units 4 - 5

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

Total

30



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. Salma spent her holiday in Dahab with her friends. (.....)
2. The family saw starfish while they were hiking. (.....)
3. Salma told her family not to touch the corals. (.....)
4. They went horseback riding in the mountains. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3Ms)

1. Oyoum Mousa is an important site.
a) historical b) boring c) new d) small
2. The sea is very rough today. You go snorkeling.
a) should b) shouldn't c) can d) are
3. The mountains make the place look and great.
a) ordinary b) small c) ugly d) amazing
4. My sister can on her oud very well.
a) hide b) chess c) perform music d) socialize
5. Sara bought a dress for the school party.
a) beautiful b) wooden c) angry d) lazy
6. Bedouins often live in in the desert.
a) hospitals b) schools c) tents d) offices

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

seagulls - trip - Corniche - Canal - sea

Last weekend, my family and I went to Port Said. We started our
 ① early in the morning. When we arrived, we walked along
 the ② and watched ships sailing near the point where the
 Suez ③ begins. The boys were laughing and taking pictures
 while ④ flew above them, making cheerful noise.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(8Ms)

On May 1st, we celebrate Labor Day. It is a special day to honor workers and all the hard work they do. My family and I joined a small event in our neighborhood. We saw workers being thanked for their jobs. I made a colorful card to give to my father and teacher. Everyone enjoyed the celebrations and shared happy moments together. I had a wonderful time celebrating Labor Day. Everyone should appreciate workers and their efforts every day!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The narrator wrote about
 a) a holiday b) brave heroes c) a school play d) Labor Day
- Everyone was during the celebration.
 a) happy b) tired c) confused d) sad

B Answer the following questions:

- When is the Labor Day?

▶

- Why did the narrator make a colorful card?

▶

- Who should everyone appreciate and be thankful for?

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

- Hany should (studies) tonight.
- You should (touching) the starfish.

Review 2

3. Omar was (sadly) when he lost his ball.

4. The (friend) teacher helps students.

6 Punctuate the following:

(4Ms)

1. you have an important exam tomorrow

▶

2. Who helped zein decorate the room

▶

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

(8Ms)

"A trip to Sinai"



beautiful - springs - Bedouins

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Story's Video

Unit 6

Story

The Lost Kite

الطائرة الورقية المفقودة

Learning Outcomes



Speaking

- Retell a story using key words.
- Describe characters' feelings and actions.
- Discuss the problem, solution, and moral with others



Writing

- Write short sentences or paragraphs about characters, setting, or events
- Describe the problem and solution
- Explain the story's moral using key vocabulary.



Reading

- Identify characters, setting, and main events.
- Recognize the problem and solution.
- Understand the story's moral or lesson.



Listening

- Answer questions about characters, events, and feelings.
- Retell parts of the story after listening.
- Follow simple directions mentioned in the story.

Story Elements عناصر القصة

- 1 **Title:** The name of the story. عُنوان القِصة: اسم القصة.
- 2 **Setting:** The place and time of the story (When & Where). مكان و زمان حدوث القصة.
- 3 **Characters:** People or animals in a story. الناس أو الحيوانات في القصة.
- 4 **Plot/Problem:** The main events that happen in the story. الأحداث الرئيسية التي تحدث في القصة.
- 5 **Problem:** The main challenge or difficulty in the story. التحدي أو الصعوبة الرئيسية في القصة.
- 6 **Solution:** How the problem is solved. كيف يتم حل المشكلة.
- 7 **Moral:** The lesson the story teaches us. الدرس الذي نتعلمه من القصة.

The Lost Kite - Story Elements

- 1 **Title:** The Lost Kite الطائرة الورقية المفقودة
- 2 **Setting:** A village by a river, one bright and sunny afternoon. قرية على نهر، في ظهيرة مُشمِسة ومُشرقة.
- 3 **Characters:** Omar, Sami, the old man. عمر، سامي، الرجل العجوز.
- 4 **Plot/Problem:** Sami's kite flew away because of a strong wind and landed on the roof of an old house across the river. طارت طائرة سامي الورقية بعيدًا بسبب رياح قوية وهبطت على سطح منزل قديم عبر النهر.
- 5 **Solution:** The boys asked a kind old man for help, and he got the kite for them. طلب الصبيان المساعدة من رجل مسن لطيف، فقام بإحضار الطائرة الورقية لهما.
- 6 **Moral:** Helping others can solve problems and create happiness. Kindness makes the world brighter. مساعدة الآخرين يمكن أن تحل المشاكل وتخلق السعادة. اللطف يجعل العالم أكثر إشراقًا.

الشخصيات Characters



Omar

A boy who lives in a village. He is a good friend who supports Sami and suggests asking for help. He is kind and does not give up.

ولد يعيش في قرية. هو صديق مخلص يدعم سامي ويقترح طلب المساعدة. إنه طيب ولا يستسلم.



Sami

Omar's best friend. He owns a new red kite. He is sad when he loses it but feels happy when he gets it back. He learns to be more careful.

أفضل أصدقاء عمر. يمتلك طائرة ورقية حمراء جديدة. يحزن عندما يفقدها لكنه يسعد عندما تعود إليه. يتعلم أن يكون أكثر حرصاً.



The old man

A kind man who lives in an old house. He helps the boys get the kite from the roof. He teaches them about kindness.

رجل لطيف يعيش في منزل قديم. يساعد الولدين في استعادة الطائرة من السقف. يعلمهم عن اللطف.

القاموس المصور Picture Dictionary



dates

تمر



field

حقل



unrolled the string

فك الحيط



drifted / طافت / انجرفت



bridge جسر


mud-brick building
مَبْنَى مِنَ الصُّوبِ الطِّينِي


kite طائرة ورقية



roof سقف



village قرية



palm trees أشجار النخيل



river نهر

Part 1



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

quiet

هادئ especially

خاصة

wide

واسع edge

حافة

dusty

مغبر hold

أمسك

sway

يتأرجح pick

يقطف

breeze

نسيم tired

متعب

Omar lived in a quiet **village** by a wide **river**. The village was small, but it was full of life. Children played in the dusty streets, women carried baskets to the market, and tall **palm trees** swayed gently in the breeze. Omar loved his home, especially the open **field** near the edge of the village.



عاش عمر في قرية هادئة بجانب نهر واسع. كانت القرية صغيرة لكنها كانت مليئة بالحياة. كان الاطفال يلعبون في الشوارع الترابية، والنساء يحملن سلالاً الى السوق، واشجار النخيل الطويلة تتأرجح برفق في النسيم. عمر احب بيته، خاصة الحقل المفتوح قرب حافة القرية.

One bright and **sunny** afternoon, Omar's best friend Sami ran to meet him. Sami carried a new red **kite**, and Omar held a basket of sweet dates that his father had picked that morning. "We can eat these when we get tired," Omar said with a smile. Sami laughed, "First, let's see how high my kite can fly!"

في ظهيرة مشمسة ساطعة، ركض صديق عمر المفضل، سامي، للقاءه. كان سامي يحمل طائرة ورقية حمراء جديدة، وكان عمر يحمل سلة من التمر الحلو الذي قطفه ابوه ذلك الصباح. قال عمر مبتسماً: "يمكننا أن نأكل هذا عندما نتعب." ضحك سامي: "اولاً، دعنا نرى الى اي ارتفاع يمكن لطائري الورقية ان تحلق!"

Questions and Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Omar live?

أين كان عمر يعيش؟

▶ He lived in a quiet village by a wide river.

كان يعيش في قرية هادئة بجانب نهر واسع.

2. Where did the children play?

أين لعب الاطفال؟

▶ The children played in the dusty streets.

لعب الاطفال في الشوارع المغبرة.

3. What did the women carry to the market?

ماذا كانت تحمل السيدات في الطريق للسوق؟
كانوا يحملوا السلات.

▶ They carried baskets.

4. Who picked the dates?

من قطف التمر؟
والد عمر

▶ Omar's father

5. What kind of trees were in the village?

ما نوع الأشجار الموجودة في القرية؟
أشجار نخيل طويلة.

▶ Tall palm trees.

6. What did Sami carry?

ماذا كان سامي يحمل؟

▶ He carried a new red kite.

كان يحمل طائرة ورقية حمراء جديدة.

7. What was in Omar's basket?

ماذا كان في سلة عمر؟

▶ There were sweet dates in the basket.

كان هناك تمر حلو في السلة.

8. Where did they plan to go?

إلى أين خططوا للذهاب؟

▶ They planned to go to the open field.

كانوا يخططون للذهاب إلى الحقل المفتوح.

9. What did Omar love about his village?

ماذا أحب عمر في قريته؟

▶ Omar loved the open field near the edge of the village.

أحب عمر الحقل المفتوح القريب من حافة القرية.

10. Who ran to meet Omar one afternoon?

من الذي ركض لمقابلة عمر في إحدى الظهرات؟

▶ His best friend, Sami

صديقه المفضل، سامي

11. What did Omar suggest they do with the dates?

ماذا اقترح عمر أن يفعلوا بالتمر؟

▶ Omar suggested they eat the dates when they got tired.

اقترح عمر أن يأكلا التمر عندما يشعران بالتعب.

12. What did Sami want to do first?

ماذا أراد سامي أن يفعل أولاً؟

▶ Sami wanted to fly his kite first.

أراد سامي أن يطير طائرته الورقية أولاً.

Exercises on Part

1

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Omar lived in a big city. (.....)
2. Sami carried a basket of dates. (.....)
3. The village was full of life. (.....)
4. Omar loved the closed market in his village. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Omar lived in a quiet by a wide river.
a) city b) village c) desert d) mountain
2. Sami carried a new kite.
a) blue b) green c) red d) yellow
3. Omar had a basket of sweet
a) apples b) bananas c) oranges d) dates
4. They planned to go to the open
a) market b) field c) river d) house

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

field - dates - kite - friend - green

Omar lived in a quiet village by a wide river. One day, his
 ① Sami came carrying a new red ② Omar
 had a basket of sweet ③ They decided to go to the open
 ④ to play.



notice	يلاحظ	across	عبر / على الجانب الآخر
nearby	قريب	cheer	يهتف
chase	يطارد / يلاحق	proud	فخور
climb	يتسلق / يصعد	rush	يندفع
bright	مشرق / لامع	tightly	بإحكام
begin	يبدأ	slip	ينزلق
rise	يرتفع / يصعد	through	عبر / من خلال
dance	يرقص	warning	إنذار

When they reached the field, the boys noticed other kids playing nearby. Some were chasing a ball, others were climbing trees, but everyone stopped to watch Sami's bright kite. Sami carefully **unrolled** the string, and the kite began to rise.



عندما وصلوا إلى الحقل، لاحظ الصبيان أطفالاً آخرين يلعبون بالقرب. كان بعضهم يطاردون كرة، وآخرون يتسلقون الأشجار، لكن الجميع توقف ليروا طائرة سامي الورقية اللامعة. فكّ سامي الخيط بعناية، وبدأت الطائرة الورقية ترتفع.

"Look, Omari!" he shouted. "It's flying higher than the palm trees!" The red kite danced across the blue sky, moving down with the wind. The children clapped and cheered. Sami felt proud—his kite was the most beautiful thing he had ever owned.

انظر يا عمري! ضرخ سامي. "إنها تطير أعلى من أشجار النخيل!" رقصت الطائرة الورقية الحمراء عبر السماء الزرقاء، تتحرك مع اتجاه الرياح. صقّ الأطفال وهتفوا بحماس. شعر سامي بالفخر — كانت طائرته الورقية أجمل شيء امتلكه في حياته.

But then, without warning, a strong wind rushed across the field. Sami tried to hold the string tightly, but it **slipped** through his fingers. "No! Come back!" he cried. The kite flew higher and higher until it **drifted** across the river. ولكن فجأة، وبدون سابق إنذار، هبّت ريح قوية عبر الحقل. حاول سامي أن يمسك بالخيط بإحكام، لكنه انزلق من بين أصابعه. صرخ: "لا! عودي!" طارت الطائرة الورقية أعلى وأعلى حتى انجرفت عبر النهر.

Questions and Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. What were some of the kids doing in the field?

ماذا كان بعض الأطفال يفعلون في الحقل؟

► Some were chasing a ball, and others were climbing trees.

بعضهم كان يركض وراء كرة، وآخرون كانوا يتسلقون الأشجار.

2. What did everyone stop to watch?

على ماذا توقف الجميع لمشاهدة؟

► Sami's bright kite.

على الطائرة الورقية اللامعة لسامي.

3. What did Sami do carefully before the kite began to rise?

ماذا فعل سامي بحذر قبل أن تبدأ الطائرة الورقية بالارتفاع؟

► He carefully unrolled the string.

لقد فكّ السلك بعناية.

4. How did Sami feel when the kite was flying high?

كيف شعر سامي عندما كانت الطائرة الورقية تحلق عالياً؟

► He felt proud.

شعر بالفخر.

5. Where did the kite fly?

أين طارت الطائرة؟

► It flew in the sky, higher than the palm trees.

طارّت في السماء، أعلى من أشجار النخيل.

6. How did the children react to the kite?

كيف كان رد فعل الأطفال تجاه الطائرة؟

► They clapped and cheered.

صفقوا وهتفوا.

7. What happened when the strong wind came?

ماذا حدث عندما هبت الريح القوية؟

► The string slipped, and the kite drifted away.

انفلت الخيط، وطارّت الطائرة بعيداً.

8. Where did the kite go?

إلى أين ذهبت الطائرة؟

► It drifted across the river.

طارت عبر النهر.

9. What happened without warning?

ماذا حدث دون سابق إنذار؟

► A strong wind suddenly rushed across the field.

هبّت فجأة رياح قوية عبرت الحقل.

10. What slipped through Sami's fingers?

ما الشيء الذي انزلق من بين أصابع سامي؟

► The string of the kite slipped through his fingers.

انزلق خيط الطائرة الورقية من بين أصابعه.

Exercises on Part 2

1 Read and write **T (True)** or **F (False)**:

1. The kite flew lower than the palm trees. ()
2. The children ignored the flying kite. ()
3. Sami felt proud of his kite. ()
4. The string slipped through Sami's fingers. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The kite flew than the palm trees.
a) lower b) faster c) slower d) higher
2. The children when they saw the kite flying.
a) cried b) ran away
c) clapped and cheered d) slept
3. The made the kite drift away.
a) rain b) strong wind c) sun d) birds
4. The kite drifted across the
a) river b) village c) field d) market

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

cheered - river - drifted - slipped - unrolled

The two friends reached the field. Sami ① the string and the kite began to fly. The children clapped and ② Suddenly, a strong wind came and the string ③ from Sami's fingers. The kite ④ away across the river.

Part: 3



land	يهبط	road	طريق
sink	يغرق	wooden	خشبي
whisper	يهمس	bridge	جسر
tear	دمعة	front of	أمام
form	يتكوّن	faded	باهت
shoulder	كتف	vines	كروم/نباتات متسلقة
give up	يستسلم	nervous	متوتر
try	يحاول	knock	يطرق
gently	برفق		

The kite finally landed on the roof of an old **mud-brick building** across the river. Sami's heart sank. "Oh no," he whispered, tears forming in his eyes. "I'll never get it back."



هبطت الطائرة الورقية أخيرًا على سطح مبنى قديم من الطوب اللبن عبر النهر. شعر سامي بالحزن الشديد. همس قائلاً: "يا إلهي"، وبدأت الدموع تتكوّن في عينيه. "لن أستعيدها أبدًا."

Omar put a hand on his friend's shoulder. "Don't give up, Sami. Let's try. Maybe someone in that house can help us."

وضع عمر يده على كتف صديقه. وقال: "لا تيأس يا سامي. دعنا نجرب. ربما يستطيع أحد في ذلك المنزل مساعدتنا."

The two boys walked along the dusty road, crossed the small wooden **bridge** over the river, and stopped in front of the old house. Its walls were faded, and vines climbed around the windows. Sami felt nervous, but Omar knocked gently on the wooden door.

سار الصبيان على الطريق المغطى بالغبار، وعبرا الجسر الخشبي الصغير فوق النهر، وتوقفا أمام المنزل القديم. كانت جدرانه باهتة، وتتسلق الكروم حول النوافذ. شعر سامي بالتوتر، لكن عمر طرق الباب الخشبي برفق.

Questions and Answers



Answer the following questions:

1. Where did the kite land? أين هبطت الطائرة؟
▶ It landed on the roof of an old mud-brick building. هبطت على سقف مبنى قديم من الطوب الطيني.
2. How did Sami feel? كيف شعر سامي؟
▶ He felt very sad and thought he would never get his kite back. شعر بحزن شديد وظن أنه لن يستعيد طائرته أبداً.
3. What did Omar tell Sami? ماذا قال عمر لسامي؟
▶ He told him not to give up and to try asking for help. قال له ألا يستسلم ويحاول طلب المساعدة.
4. What did the boys do to reach the house? ماذا فعل الولدان للوصول إلى المنزل؟
▶ They walked along the road and crossed the small wooden bridge over the river. سارا على طول الطريق وعبرا الجسر الخشبي الصغير فوق النهر.
5. How is the old house described? كيف تم وصف المنزل القديم؟

► Its walls were faded, and vines climbed around the windows.
كانت جدرانه باهتة، وكانت (الكروم) نباتات متسلقة تتعلق حول النوافذ.

6. How did Sami feel when they reached the house?

► He felt nervous.

كيف شعر سامي عندما وصلا إلى المنزل؟
شعر بالتوتر.

7. Why do you think Omar said, "Don't give up," instead of just going home?

► Because he was a good friend who wanted to help Sami, and he believed they could find a solution.

لأنه كان صديقاً وفياً يريد مساعدة سامي، وكان يؤمن بأنهما قادران على إيجاد حل.

8. Who knocked on the door?

► Omar knocked on the wooden door.

من الذي طرق الباب؟
عمر هو من طرق الباب الخشبي.

Exercises on Part 3

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- The kite landed in a tall tree. (.....)
- Omar suggested they should give up. (.....)
- The boys crossed a metal bridge. (.....)
- The walls of the house looked new and bright. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The two boys walked along the road.
a) icy b) dusty c) golden d) wide
- Omar told Sami ".....".
a) Let's go home b) It's too difficult
c) Don't give up d) I'm tired
- They crossed a bridge over the river.
a) stone b) rope c) metal d) wooden
- Sami felt when they reached the house.
a) happy b) nervous c) angry d) bored

Read and complete the text with words from the box:

give up - bridge - old - nervous - roof

The kite finally landed on the roof of an old house. Omar told Sami not to ① They crossed a wooden ② over the river. and stopped in front of the ③ house Sami felt ④ but Omar knocked gently on the wooden door.

Part 4



moment

لحظة **chuckle**

يضحك

creak

يصدر صرير **fetch**

يحضّر

beard

لحية **anxiously**

بقلق

greet

يحيي **untangle**

يحلّ

step

يخطو **tiles**

قرميد (بلاط السطح)

shyly

بخجل **tighter**

بإحكام

After a moment, the door creaked open. An **old man** with kind eyes and a white beard appeared. "Hello!" he greeted warmly. "What brings you here?" Sami stepped forward shyly. "My kite... it flew away and landed on your roof. Could you help us, please?"



بعد لحظة، انفتح الباب ببطء محدثاً صريراً خفيفاً. ظهر رجل عجوز ذو عينيّن طبيّتين ولحية بيضاء. رحّب بهما بحرارة: "مرحباً! ما الذي جاء بكم إلى هنا؟"

تقدّم سامي بخجل وقال: "طائرتي الورقية... طارت بعيداً وهبطت على سطح منزلك. هل يمكن أن تساعدنا، من فضلك؟"

The old man chuckled. "Ah, I saw it! A very fine kite indeed." He **fetches** a small ladder and slowly climbed up. The boys watched **anxiously** as he reached out and untangled the kite from the tiles. Finally, he climbed down carefully and placed the kite back into Sami's hands.

"Here you are, young man," he said with a smile. "Take care to hold it tighter next time."

ضحك الرجل العجوز وقال: "آه، لقد رأيته! إنها طائرة ورقية جميلة جدًا." أحضر سلمًا صغيرًا وتساقه ببطء. راقب الصبيان بقلق بينما امتد ليحلّ الطائرة الورقية من بين القرميد (بلاط السقف - السطح). أخيرًا، نزل بحذر ووضع الطائرة الورقية في يد سامي. قال مبتسمًا: "ها هي، أيها الشاب، احرص على الإمساك بها بإحكام في المرة القادمة."

Questions and Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. Who appeared when the door opened? من ظهر عندما انفتح الباب؟
▶ An old man with kind eyes and a white beard. رجل عجوز بعينين طيبتين ولحية بيضاء.
2. What did Sami ask the old man? ماذا طلب سامي من الرجل العجوز؟
▶ He asked him to help get the kite from the roof. طلب منه المساعدة في استعادة الطائرة من السقف.
3. How did the old man greet the boys? كيف رحّب الرجل العجوز بالصبيان؟
▶ He greeted them warmly and said, "Hello! What brings you here?" رحّب بهم بحرارة وقال: "مرحبًا! ما الذي جاء بكم إلى هنا؟"
4. How did the boys feel while the old man was getting the kite? بماذا شعر الصبيان عندما كان الرجل العجوز يجلب لهما الطائرة؟
▶ They watched anxiously. كانوا يراقبون بقلق.
5. What advice did the old man give Sami? ما النصيحة التي قدمها الرجل العجوز لسامي بعد ما أعاد له طائرته؟
▶ He advised Sami to hold the kite tighter next time. نصح سامي بأن يمسك الطائرة بقوة في المرة القادمة.

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The old man had angry eyes and a white beard. (.....)
2. Sami spoke loudly to the old man. (.....)
3. The boys watched anxiously when the old man climbed the ladder. (.....)
4. The old man used a long stick to get the kite. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The old man had eyes and a white beard.
a) kind b) angry c) sad d) big
2. Sami stepped forward
a) loudly b) shyly c) angrily d) happily
3. The old man used a to reach the kite.
a) rope b) stick c) ladder d) chair
4. The old man told Sami to next time.
a) throw it higher b) hold it tighter
c) let it go d) fly another kite

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

palm trees - tiles - beard - ladder - shyly

After a moment, the door creaked open. An old man with a white
 ① opened the door. Sami spoke ② and asked for help.
 The old man fetched a ③ and climbed up. He untangled the kite
 from the ④ and brought it down.

Part: 5



hug	يعانق	brighter	أكثر إشراقاً
glowing	متوهج / يضيء	wave	يلوّح
joy	فرح	soaring	مُخلّق
kindness	لطف / طيبة	against	مقابل / ضد
nod	يوميء	adventure	مغامرة

Sami hugged his kite tightly. "Thank you, sir! You saved my day," he said, his face glowing with joy. Omar added, "We will always remember your kindness."

The old man nodded. "Kindness makes the world brighter, just like your red kite in the sky."



احتضن سامي طائرته بشدة. قال وهو وجهه يضيء بالفرح: "شكراً لك يا سيدي! لقد أنقذت يومي". وأضاف عمر: "سنظل دائماً نتذكر لطفك".
أوماً الرجل العجوز برأسه قائلاً: "اللطف يجعل العالم أكثر إشراقاً، تماماً مثل طائرتك الحمراء في السماء".

The boys waved goodbye and ran back to the field. This time, Sami held the string with both hands while Omar stood beside him, ready to help. The kite rose once again, **soaring** high above the village. Sami and Omar laughed as it danced against the blue sky, happy that their adventure had a wonderful ending.

لوّح الصبيان مودعين وركضا عائدين إلى الحقل. هذه المرة، أمسك سامي الخيط بكلتا يديه بينما وقف عمر بجانبه، مستعداً للمساعدة. ارتفعت الطائرة الورقية مرة أخرى، محلقة عالياً فوق القرية. ضحك سامي وعمر بينما كانت ترقص في السماء الزرقاء، سعداء لأن مغامرتهما انتهت نهاية رائعة.



Answer the following questions:

1. What did Sami do when he got his kite back?

ماذا فعل سامي عندما استعاد طائرته الورقية؟

- ▶ He hugged his kite tightly and said, "Thank you, sir! You saved my day."

عانق طائرته وقال: "شكراً لك يا سيدي! لقد أنقذت يومي".

2. What did the old man say about kindness?

ماذا قال الرجل العجوز عن اللطف؟

- ▶ He said kindness makes the world brighter, just like Sami's red kite in the sky.

قال إن اللطف يجعل العالم أكثر إشراقاً. تماماً مثل طائرة سامي الحمراء في السماء.

3. How was Sami more careful the second time?

كيف كان سامي أكثر حرصاً في المرة الثانية؟

- ▶ He held the string with both hands.

أمسك الخيط بكلتا يديه.

4. What did Omar say they would always remember?

ماذا قال عمر إنهما سيتذكran دائماً؟

- ▶ He said they would always remember the old man's kindness.

قال إنهما سيتذكran دائماً لطف الرجل العجوز.

5. How did Sami and Omar feel at the end of their adventure?

كيف شعر سامي وعمر في نهاية مغامرتهم؟

- ▶ Sami and Omar felt happy that their adventure had a wonderful ending.

شعر سامي وعمر بالسعادة لأن مغامرتهم انتهت بنهاية رائعة.

6. What lesson do you think Sami and Omar learned from this adventure?

ما الدرس الذي تعلمه سامي وعمر من هذه المغامرة برأيك؟

- ▶ They learned that kindness is important, and that they should never give up when facing a problem.

تعلموا أن اللطف مهم، وأنه لا ينبغي أن يستسلموا عند مواجهة مشكلة.

Exercises on Part

5

1 Read and write **T** (True) or **F** (False):

1. Sami was angry when he got his kite back. (.....)
2. The kite soared high above the village. (.....)
3. Sami held the string with one hand the second time. (.....)
4. The boys were happy at the end of the story. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Sami his kite when he got it back.
a) hugged b) threw c) broke d) lost
2. The old man said kindness makes the world
a) darker b) bigger c) smaller d) brighter
3. Sami held the string with hand(s) the second time.
a) one b) both c) three d) no
4. The story teaches us about
a) kindness b) giving up c) being unkind d) running away

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

trees - hugged - kindness - brighter - both

The old man climbed down carefully and placed the kite back into Sami's hands. Sami ① his kite tightly. The old man said that ② makes the world ③ The boys ran back to the field, and this time Sami held the string with ④ hands.

General Questions

1 Read and write (True) or (False):

1. Omar lived in a big city by the sea. (.....)
2. Sami carried a new blue kite. (.....)
3. The kite flew higher than the palm trees. (.....)

4. The children ignored the flying kite. (.....)
5. A strong rain made the kite drift away. (.....)
6. The kite landed in a roof of a school. (.....)
7. The boys crossed a wooden bridge. (.....)
8. The old man refused to help the boys. (.....)
9. Sami held the string tightly the second time. (.....)
10. The story teaches us about kindness. (.....)

2

Read and complete the sentences using the words in the box:

bridge - soaring - string - drifted - village - kindness - field

1. Omar lived in a quiet near the river.
2. The boys played in the open
3. The kite away across the river.
4. They crossed a small wooden
5. The old man taught them about
6. The kite was high in the sky at the end.
7. Sami held the with both hands.

3

Read and match (A) with (B):

'A'

1. Omar
2. Sami
3. The old man
4. The kite

'B'

- a) landed on a roof of an old house.
- b) was kind and helped the boys.
- c) suggested they ask for help.
- d) felt proud of his new red kite.

4

Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Sami feel proud when the children watched his kite?
▶
2. How did the walls of the old house look?
▶
3. What happened when the strong wind came?
▶

4. How did the boys reach the other side of the river?
▶
5. What did the old man use to get the kite?
▶
6. How did Sami thank the old man?
▶
7. What did the old man say about kindness?
▶
8. How did the boys feel when the old man reached for the kite?
▶
9. What lessons did the boys learn?
▶
10. What made the ending of their adventure wonderful?
▶

5 Write (T) true or (F) false:

1. Sami carried a basket of dates. ()
2. Omar's kite flew high in the sky before it got stuck. ()
3. The boys gave up and went home. ()
4. They solved the problem by helping each other. ()
5. The story shows the importance of teamwork. ()

Student's Book Exercises



Student's
Book

1 Put these events in order by writing the number in front of the sentence

a Sami's kite landed on the roof.

b Omar and Sami went to the old man's house.

c The kite flew high in the sky.

d The old man returned the kite.

2

Choose the correct answer:

- Where did Omar and Sami go to play with the kite?
 - in the market
 - in the open field near the village
 - on the riverbank
 - on the roof of a house
- How did the children in the village react when Sami's kite flew?
 - they ignored it
 - they clapped and cheered
 - they ran away
 - they asked for the kite
- What problem did the boys face?
 - their basket of dates fell into the river.
 - their kite got landed on a roof.
 - they lost their way home.
 - a storm broke their kite.
- How did the boys solve their problem?
 - they built a new kite.
 - they climbed the tree together and freed the kite.
 - they asked a neighbor for help.
 - they decided to play another game.
- What lesson do the boys learn?
 - sharing is not important.
 - working together helps solve problems.
 - it's better to play alone.
 - kites are too difficult to play with.

3

Think and answer:

- Why did the kite fly across the river?
- Why did the boys ask the old man for help?
- How did Sami's feelings change from losing the kite to getting it back?

Losing the kite	
Getting the kite back	

4

Read again and fill in the blanks:

- Omar carried a of dates.
- The boys lived in a small near the river.
- The kite got stuck in a
- The boys had a but they worked together.
- Finally, they found a

The Story Answers

Exercises on Part 1

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b. village 2. c. red
3. d. dates 4. b. field

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

1. friend 2. kite
3. dates 4. field

Exercises on Part 2

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. d. higher
2. c. clapped and cheered
3. b. strong wind
4. a. river

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

1. unrolled 2. cheered
3. slipped 4. drifted

Exercises on Part 3

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. F 2. F 3. F 4. F

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. b) dusty
2. c) Don't give up
3. d) wooden
4. b) nervous

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

1. give up 2. bridge
3. old 4. nervous

Exercises on Part 4

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) kind 2. b) shyly
3. c) ladder 4. b) hold it tighter

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

1. beard 2. shyly
3. ladder 4. tiles

Exercises on Part 5

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. a) hugged 2. d) brighter
3. b) both 4. a) kindness

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

1. hugged 2. kindness
3. brighter 4. both

General questions

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F
6. F 7. T 8. F 9. T 10. T

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

1. village 2. field
3. drifted 4. bridge
5. kindness 6. soaring
7. string

3 Read and match (A) with (B)

- (1 - c) (2 - d) (3 - b) (4 - a)

4 Answer the following questions:

1. Because it was flying higher the palm trees.
2. The walls were faded
3. A strong wind suddenly rushed across the field.
4. They walked along the road and crossed the small wooden bridge over the river.
5. A ladder
6. He said, "Thank you, sir"

7. It makes the world brighter.

8. They felt happy again.

9. They learned that kindness can make the world brighter.

10. They got the kite back.

5 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T

Student's Book Exercises



1 Put these events in order by writing the number in front of the sentence:

- (c-1): The kite flew high in the sky
(a-2): The kite landed on the roof
(b-3): Omar and Sami went to the old man's house
(d-4): The old man returned the kite.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. b) in the open field near the village
2. b) they clapped and cheered
3. b) their kite got landed on a roof.
4. c) they asked a neighbor for help.
5. b) working together helps solve problems.

3 Think and answer:

1. Because the wind was strong.
2. To get the kite again from the roof of his house.
3. sad - happy

4 Read and fill in the gaps:

1. basket 2. village
3. tiles on a roof of an old house
4. problem 5. solution

Test 1 on Unit 1

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Ahmed lives in a small village near the Nile River. Every morning, he helps his grandfather on the green farms. They raise animals and grow vegetables. Sometimes, Ahmed travels on a camel to visit nearby villages. He enjoys learning about plants and the environment.

Test 2 on Unit 1

Last weekend, Ali and Mohammed visited a small village. The weather was sunny, and the air was fresh. They walked by the river, saw colorful flowers, and a small forest with birds. A farmer told them about an oasis. At the market, they bought fruit and met friendly sellers.

Test 3 on Unit 2

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

At school and at home, we reduce waste, reuse bags, and recycle paper. We save water, turn off lights, and protect animals and plants. Small actions by everyone help keep our planet clean, safe, and healthy for the future today.

Test 4 on Unit 2

We can all help keep our planet clean and healthy. Using less paper, writing on both

sides, and sending emails helps. Walking, riding bikes, and sharing rides reduce pollution. Using tote bags instead of plastic protects animals. Throwing litter in bins keeps our surroundings clean and safe for everyone.

Test 5 on Unit 3

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Last weekend, Sara helped her mother in the kitchen. She washed the vegetables carefully and prepared sandwiches. Then, she packed the food into bags. Sara felt happy and proud, knowing she had helped create a delicious meal for the family.

Test 6 on Unit 3

Two weeks ago, Lina and her brother helped the poor people in their neighborhood. They prepared food early in the morning and packed it carefully into bags. They knocked on doors and gave the food to families. At the end of the day, they felt proud and happy.

Revision 7 on Units 1-2-3

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Last weekend, Ahmed and Omar visited a small village near the city. They enjoyed the fresh air, colorful flowers, tall trees, and singing birds. At the market, they bought fresh fruits and learned about village life from friendly sellers.

Revision 8 on Units 1-2-3

Last month, Ahmed and Layla helped their neighbors by collecting food for poor families.

They visited the market early, bought fruits, vegetables, and bread, and packed everything carefully. They delivered the bags to the houses and felt happy after helping others. It was a kind and useful day.



Test 9 on Unit 4

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Salma celebrated her birthday in the garden and decorated it with colorful balloons, shiny ribbons, and bright lights, while her mother baked a delicious cake. She wrapped giveaways for her friends to share her happiness.



Test 10 on Unit 4

During the school celebration, the students wore special clothes and gathered in the playground. They began to clap happily as the music started. Many students used their cameras to take photos of their friends and teachers. At night, colorful fireworks lit up the sky, making the day unforgettable for everyone.



Test 11 on Unit 5

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Oyoun Mousa, which is also called Moses Springs, is a beautiful place in South Sinai. Visitors enjoy the fresh water, tall palm trees, and quiet desert. They can take photos, walk near the springs, and learn about its history and local Bedouin life.



Test 12 on Unit 5

Last weekend, my family and I visited Port Said. We walked along the Corniche, watched ships sailing, and took many photos. The boys laughed while seagulls flew above us. We enjoyed the fresh sea breeze, explored the local market, and tasted delicious seafood. It was a fun and memorable trip.



Revision 13 on Units 4 - 5

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Last Friday, Zein celebrated his birthday at home. He woke up very excited. With his sister's help, he cleaned the living room and decorated it with colorful balloons. Zein's mother baked a delicious cake, and he put candles on the top.



Revision 14 on Units 4 - 5

Salma's mid-year vacation was wonderful! She spent her holiday in Dahab with her family. They went scuba diving and saw many starfish. They also went snorkeling and saw corals. Salma reminded everyone that they shouldn't touch the corals because they are living sea animals. They went hiking in the mountains and horseback riding.

ENGLISH

4th Prim.
2026
SECOND TERM



By a group of specialists

Contents

Pages

Part 1

Revision on Unit (1)

3

Revision on Unit (2)

10

Revision on Unit (3)

17

Revision on Unit (4)

24

Revision on Unit (5)

31

Part 2

Weekly Evaluations

38

Part 3

General Tetss

49

Part 4

Listening Scripts

85

Part 5

Answers Key

87

Revision on Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

1. People in the desert live in
 a) buildings b) offices c) tents d) markets
2. The sound of the birds made us feel and happy.
 a) tired b) peaceful c) sad d) angry
3. Farmers grow crops in large open
 a) rooms b) boxes c) shops d) fields
4. The is everything around us, like air, water, land, and animals.
 a) environment b) desert c) building d) river
5. A/An is a green place in the desert with water.
 a) office b) oasis c) market d) building
6. Villagers know their well.
 a) challenges b) neighbors c) advantages d) travels
7. Walk carefully; the forest can be narrow and muddy.
 a) bridges b) walls c) paths d) hot
8. Farmers grow like wheat and corn.
 a) fish b) crops c) windows d) paths
9. The two villages are a short apart.
 a) desk b) walls c) distance d) picture
10. They walked along the and enjoyed the view.
 a) house b) riverbank c) tree d) sail
11. A/An is a big place with many people, cars, and tall buildings.
 a) village b) desert c) city d) oasis

12. There were tall near the water.

- a) fish b) boat c) palm trees d) ship

13. A catches fish with his net.

- a) fireman b) policeman c) farmer d) fisherman

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

1. Last year, we to a village.

- a) travel b) travels c) traveled d) traveling

2. She her homework yesterday.

- a) do b) does c) doing d) did

3. They in a tent when they were in the desert.

- a) live b) lives c) lived d) living

4. I a beautiful picture of the river yesterday.

- a) look b) takes c) take d) taking

5. He didn't the movie last night.

- a) watch b) watched c) watching d) watches

6. We fresh fruit from the market last Friday.

- a) buy b) buys c) bought d) buying

7. Did you your grandfather last week?

- a) visits b) visited c) visiting d) visit

8. The children play football yesterday because it was raining.

- a) don't b) weren't c) didn't d) doesn't

9. your mother cook dinner last night?

- a) Did b) Is c) Was d) Does

10. We didn't the movie because it was boring.

- a) liked b) liking c) likes d) like

11. Did the tourist the Pyramids when they visited Giza?

- a) see b) sees c) seeing d) saw

12. Did Ali clean his room? No, he

- a) wasn't b) doesn't c) didn't d) not did

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

neighbors - wells - camels - tents - oasis

Life in the desert is very different. People live in ① because it is easy to move them. They use ② to get water from under the ground. They travel on ③ to go from a place to another. Sometimes they find an ④ where there are trees and water.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

challenges - buildings - shops - busy - trains

Life in the city is fast. People live in tall ① with many floors. They use cars and buses to move around. There are ② everywhere for buying things. The streets are ③ and noisy. There are many advantages like schools and hospitals, but there are also ④ like pollution and traffic.

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fields - crops - animals - quiet - simply

My grandparents usually tell me that they live in a small village near a river. They are farmers who live there in the village and grow ① like wheat and corn. They also raise ② such as cows and chickens. Life in the village is ③ and peaceful. People live ④ and help each other.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My father (**works**) on a farm when he was young.
2. She (**explain**) the lesson to her friend yesterday.
3. They (**trave**) to the oasis last summer.

Revision

4. I (not/finish) my project about city life last week.
5. We (live) in a small village two years ago.
6. They (use) wells for water in the past.
7. They (help) their neighbors yesterday.
8. My friends (not go) to the museum last weekend.
9. Where (put) you your school bag yesterday?
10. Did the girl (knows) the answer?

7 Punctuate the following:

1. i visited the desert last year



2. did your friend ride a camel



3. life in the city is noisy



4. my grandfather told us interesting stories



5. what did you learn about the desert



6. The Nile river flows through Egypt.



7. do you like village or city



8. they traveled to the desert



9. she bought fruit from the market



10. he finished his project about city life



Test on Unit

1

Total

30

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. Maha wrote about the village.

(.....)

2. People in the desert travel on buses.

(.....)

3. In the village, people grow crops.

(.....)

4. City life is busy.

(.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3Ms)

1. People who live in the desert often use to get water.

a) cars

b) wells

c) shops

d) offices

2. A/An is a green place in the desert with trees and water.

a) city

b) office

c) oasis

d) market

3. People in villages grow like wheat and corn.

a) cars

b) floors

c) buildings

d) crops

4. Last year, my family to a village in Upper Egypt.

a) went

b) goes

c) gone

d) going

5. People in the past on camels.

a) travel

b) traveled

c) travels

d) traveling

6. Did you your grandfather last summer?

a) visit

b) visited

c) visiting

d) visits

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

breakfast - fishermen - farms - stories - lunch

Last year, Youssef went to the Nile River with his grandfather. They saw green ① and palm trees. The ② were catching fish. In the afternoon, they sat under a tree and ate their ③ His grandfather told him ④ about the Nile. Youssef felt very happy.

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

(8Ms)

Mona and Sama finished their project. Sama wrote on the desert. People lived in tents, traveled on camels, and used wells for water. Mona and her cousin compared the city and the village. Mona learned that villagers farmed, raised animals, and knew their neighbors. City life has tall buildings, cars, and buses. The project was helpful; as it showed how people adapted and that every location had both advantages and challenges.

A

Choose the correct answer:

1. The opposite of the word "advantage" is

- a) challenge b) location c) project d) building

2. They learned that the village has

- a) tall buildings b) wells
c) tents d) farms and animals

B

Answer the following questions:

3. Who did Mona work with on her school project?



4. What three things did Sama learn about how people lived in the desert?



5. Give the text a suitable title.



5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

1. I (visit) my grandparents last week.

2. She (not/live) in a city when she was young.

3. They (go) to the oasis last summer.

4. Rana (learns) about the desert last project.

6 Punctuate the following:

(4Ms)

1. life in the desert is very simple



2. what do you like about the the city



7 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

(8Ms)

"Life in the Village"

► houses - fields - animals

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Revision on Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

1. Many people try to go by using less plastic and saving energy.
a) fast b) green c) home d) away
2. To protect our, we must take care of nature and animals.
a) planet b) plant c) class d) home
3. We can old bottles instead of throwing them away.
a) reduce b) litter c) delete d) reuse
4. We need to the amount of waste we make every day.
a) recycle b) reduce c) increase d) lose
5. The teacher told us to the new ideas in our project.
a) listen b) recycle c) play d) apply
6. We must throw in the bin.
a) litter b) flowers c) plants d) ideas
7. Always keep your clean to stay healthy.
a) dreams b) surroundings c) litter d) pollution
8. We have important like water, electricity, and gas.
a) resources b) fields c) villages d) plants
9. A tote bag is made of
a) plastic b) metal c) cloth d) glass
10. We need to use our resources
a) wisely b) quickly c) fast d) sadly
11. We recycle to make new things.
a) food b) materials c) animals d) voices
12. The 3Rs stand for Reduce, Reuse, and
a) Remember b) Read c) Refill d) Recycle

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

- Do you want to drink tea juice?
a) so b) because c) or d) nor
- Ali was very thirsty, he drank a big glass of water.
a) so b) because c) or d) nor
- I went to the market bought some apples.
a) because b) nor c) so d) and
- We put on our heavy jackets it was very cold outside.
a) because b) so c) or d) nor
- You can play football on Friday Saturday.
a) nor b) because c) or d) so
- My dad was tired, he went to sleep early.
a) or b) nor c) because d) so
- The baby didn't cry, did he wake up.
a) nor b) or c) but d) so
- Mona likes drawing reading books.
a) so b) because c) nor d) and
- I passed the English exam I studied very hard.
a) so b) because c) or d) nor
- I wanted to play outside, it was raining.
a) or b) because c) but d) no

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

reuse - recycle - bin - 3Rs - clean

We can all help keep our planet clean. The ❶ can help us: reduce means using less, ❷ means using things again, and ❸ means making new things from old ones. Always throw trash in the ❹

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

reduce - reuse - litter - pollution - electricity

We can all help keep our planet clean and healthy. We should try to
 ❶ waste. You can always walk or ride a bike to school to
 help lower ❷ We can save ❸ by turning off the
 lights. Also, remember to throw ❹ in the bin. It is important
 to recycle old materials into new things. When we all work together,
 we stay safe.

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

avoid - instead - recycle - turn off - less

The Teacher talked about the 3Rs: Reduce, Reuse, and Recycle.
 Reduce means using ❶ of something, like water or electricity.
 We should ❷ the taps to save water. We can "Reuse" old
 things ❸ of throwing them away. Finally, ❹ means
 taking old materials and making new ones.

6 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

items - tote bags - nor - planet - resources

Small actions can make a big difference. We should use our
 ❶ wisely. We don't waste gas, ❷ do we leave
 the lights on. We can use ❸ for shopping instead of plastic
 ones, because plastic harms sea animals and nature. We all work
 together to help our ❹ stay safe and healthy.

7 Punctuate the following:

1. we should recycle paper and plastic

▶

2. do you turn off the lights

▶

3. she uses a cloth bag for shopping

▶

4. my brother and i plant trees.

▶

5. why do you care for animals

▶

6. i avoid wasting electricity at home

▶

7. does he throw litter in bins

▶

8. we clean our neighborhood every week

▶

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



(2Ms)

1. Ali uses a plastic bag when shopping. (.....)
2. He turns off the TV while brushing his teeth. (.....)
3. Ali walks to school to reduce pollution. (.....)
4. His teacher says, "Small actions make a big noise." (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3Ms)

1. They don't eat junk food, do they drink soda.
a) or b) so c) nor d) because
2. We brought umbrellas it was raining.
a) nor b) so c) or d) because
3. She can join us today tomorrow.
a) so b) because c) nor d) or
4. Plastic, paper, and metal can be
a) replayed b) recycled c) avoided d) finished.
5. We mustn't throw litter on the ground to protect our
a) electricity b) light c) star d) planet
6. Our Earth gives us many important like water and gas.
a) resources b) fur c) fans d) garden

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

surroundings - plastic - changes - litter - sunlight

We can protect our planet by saving its resources from running out. Using ① for energy helps reduce pollution. Always put ② in the bin and choose to reuse things. We keep our ③ clean for the future. Small ④ make a big difference for the earth.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (8Ms)

A group of students cleaned their school garden last Friday. They wanted to make it better than it was. Some students picked up litter and old things. Some recycled plastic bottles and paper, and planted new trees and flowers. They felt happy and proud because their garden looked cleaner and more beautiful. Their teachers thanked them and said, "You are helping our school, town, and of course our planet!"

A Choose the correct answer:

- The students cleaned the
a) classroom b) garden c) street d) market
- They felt after cleaning.
a) sad b) angry c) happy d) tired

B Answer the following questions:

- What did the students recycle?

▶

- What did the teacher say to them?

▶

- Why did they feel proud?

▶

Test on Unit 2

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. We put the rubbish in the bin, (nor) our street stays clean.
2. He didn't turn off the TV, (so) did he turn off the light.
3. She was feeling very tired (because) sick.
4. They don't use plastic bags, (and) they use tote ones.

6 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. this bag is made of cloth



2. do you keep your neighborhood clean



7 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below: (8Ms)

"How I Help the Earth"

► recycle - reuse - reduce

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Revision on Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

1. The volunteers helped the cross the street safely.
a) promised b) elderly lady c) neighborhood d) delivery
2. The children had to to reach the roof.
a) vegetables b) food packages c) climb the stairs d) sold
3. The man is the letters to all the houses.
a) delivering b) promising c) climbing d) choosing
4. We bought fresh from the market for the picnic.
a) stairs b) baskets c) vegetables d) bags
5. The kind woman who lives in our, always helps others.
a) package b) neighborhood c) picnic d) window
6. The students arranged and vegetables on the table for the picnic.
a) promises b) letters c) fruits d) books
7. My mother added and cucumbers to the sandwich.
a) tomatoes b) coolers c) cartons d) markets
8. Reem washed the before making the sandwiches.
a) basket b) lettuce c) burger d) bread
9. The class captain opened a pack of for dessert.
a) cucumbers b) tomatoes c) carrots d) biscuits
10. They had to on each door to give the food to families.
a) climb b) deliver c) knock d) wash

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

1. I drank milk with my breakfast.
a) a glass of b) an c) many d) a slice of

2. She bought apple from the fruit shop.
 a) a b) an c) a bottle of d) some
3. We need bread to make sandwiches.
 a) an b) a c) a pack of d) many
4. My father brought water for the trip.
 a) a slice of b) a bottle of c) an d) any
5. There are five next to the table.
 a) milk b) rice c) water d) chairs
6. She added cheese to her sandwich.
 a) a piece of b) a c) an d) a bottle of
7. Yesterday, we to the market to buy food.
 a) goes b) going c) went d) go
8. The children juice after they finished playing yesterday.
 a) drink b) drinking c) drinks d) drank
9. He bought tomatoes for the salad.
 a) a bar of b) a piece of c) an d) a kilo of
10. I have pencil in my bag.
 a) a bottle of b) a c) an d) many

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

promised - vegetables - food packages - basket - elderly

Two weeks ago, Kareem and Fatma prepared food packages for the poor people in their neighborhood. They bought fresh ① from the market and packed everything carefully. Kareem helped an ② lady climb the stairs. Fatma carried a ③ of fruits for the children. They ④ to help again next weekend.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

table - milk - chocolate - help - apples

Last Sunday, Maya woke up early. She was excited to ❶ her mother in the kitchen. They washed the vegetables and set the ❷ Then, they poured ❸ into cups and packed a kilo of apples. Maya added a bar of ❹ and spread butter on the sandwiches. Everyone enjoyed the meal together.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My mother bought (a) orange from the market.
2. Ahmed drank (a slice of) milk after dinner.
3. We (eat) sandwiches in the park yesterday.
4. Laila (pack) a kilo of apples for everyone last week.
5. I want to eat (a) apple.
6. Can I have (an) water, please?
7. He wants (any) rice for his lunch.
8. We need some (tomato) for the salad.
9. I ate two (sandwich) at the picnic.
10. There are ten (banana) in the basket.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. i promised to help my friend tomorrow
▶
2. what was in the picnic basket
▶
3. nada was hungry, so she ate some cheese
▶

4. they drank one carton of milk with cereal

▶

5. what fruit did they pack for the picnic

▶

6. who went with kareem to the market?

▶

7. What did noura and her mother buy first for the picnic

▶

8. did you help an elderly person before

▶

9. Kareem chose a kilo of bananas, while fatma chose a kilo of peaches

▶

10. Our school held a picnic in Al azhar park.

▶

Test on Unit

3

Total

30

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. The picnic took place at Al Azhar Park. (.....)
2. The students only ate chocolate and biscuits at the picnic. (.....)
3. Everyone drank milk and juice during lunch. (.....)
4. They threw away the leftover food after eating. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (3Ms)

1. The market was busy, full of calling out and showing their vegetables and fruits.
a) teachers b) nurses c) volunteers d) sellers
2. The children lined up to the stairs carefully.
a) climb b) deliver c) promise d) buy
3. We need fresh to cook a healthy lunch.
a) baskets b) vegetables c) stairs d) markets
4. I cut slice of cake for dessert.
a) an b) many c) some d) a
5. My father a bag of rice from the store yesterday.
a) bring b) brought c) bringing d) brings
6. How many are there in the basket?
a) apple b) an apple c) apples d) any apples

Test on Unit 3

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

chocolate - prepared - bottle - milk - cheese

Last Saturday was sunny and perfect for a picnic. Noura's picnic basket was full of delicious items. She packed a carton of ① a ② of juice, and a bar of ③ For the sandwiches, she added a slice of bread and some ④ The picnic was fun, and everyone thanked them for the food.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (8Ms)

Two weeks ago, Adam and Sara prepared food packages for the poor people in their neighborhood. Early in the morning, they went to the market with their mother to buy everything they needed. Adam chose a kilo of bananas, while Sara picked a kilo of peaches. They also bought tomatoes, cucumbers, and bread. After delivering the food, Adam helped an elderly lady climb the stairs, and Sara gave fruits to smiling children. They promised to help again.

A Choose the correct answer:

- Adam and Sara went to the market to buy for the poor families in their neighborhood.
a) toys b) fruits and vegetables c) books d) clothes
- Adam helped an elderly lady to her home.
a) climb the stairs b) cook food
c) carry a bag d) deliver milk

B Answer the following questions:

- When did Adam and Sara go to the market?



- What kinds of food did Adam and Sara buy from the market?



5. Give a suitable title to the text.

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. Mona (help) her father carry a bag of rice yesterday.

2. We need five (chair) for the picnic table.

3. He poured (any) juice into the glass.

4. I eat (a) apple breakfast.

6 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. we bought fresh vegetables from the market

▶

2. What did ali choose at the market

▶

7 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below: (8Ms)

"Shopping for a picnic"

▶ fruits - basket - juice

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Revision on Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

1. At the party, the children like to like football and hide-and-seek.
 a) perform music b) play games
 c) eat special food d) socialize with friends
2. The band will on the stage for everyone to enjoy.
 a) exchange gifts b) read a book
 c) perform music d) do homework
3. Salma hide-and-seek with her cousins.
 a) performed b) exchanged c) ate d) played
4. The sky was full of bright on Labor Day.
 a) fireworks b) candles c) giveaways d) balloons
5. I use a camera to to remember special moments.
 a) decorate b) perform c) take photos d) clap
6. Many came to the party to celebrate with us.
 a) guests b) fireworks c) candles d) giveaways
7. The children were excited to gifts with each other.
 a) perform b) clean c) exchange d) play
8. The party hall was full of colorful hanging from the ceiling.
 a) candles b) balloons c) gifts d) cupcakes
9. The hall was beautifully for the birthday party.
 a) decorated b) wrapped c) cheered d) performed
10. Everyone received from the teachers during the celebration.
 a) ribbons b) giveaways c) fireworks d) candles
11. We should workers and their efforts every day!
 a) appreciate b) enjoy c) share d) join
12. Zein his birthday at the playground.
 a) wrapped b) helped c) celebrated d) wore

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

1. The boy helped his friend carry the heavy bag.
a) friendly b) lazy c) rude d) angry
2. Sara bought a dress for the school party.
a) wooden b) beautiful c) plastic d) fabric
3. We went to a park full of green trees and flowers.
a) red b) brown c) quiet d) yellow
4. Yahia felt when he lost his pencil case.
a) sad b) happy c) noisy d) slowly
5. The sports day made all the students cheer and clap.
a) boring b) small c) cold d) exciting
6. The flowers in the garden are
a) beauty b) quick c) beautiful d) quickly
7. I wore my hat on sunny days.
a) happy b) yellow c) sad d) short
8. The cake tastes
a) excited b) bored c) angry d) delicious
9. The sky is very today.
a) short b) green c) blue d) tall
10. My little brother has a toy car.
a) small b) slowly c) happily d) quickly
11. Omar felt when he won the race.
a) sad b) excited c) tired d) angry
12. We visited a city full of buildings and cars.
a) crowded b) loudly c) quickly d) happily

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

games - balloons - fireworks - cake - photos

We had an amazing celebration at school yesterday. Colorful ① decorated the playground, and a large ② was placed in the center. We played fun ③ with our friends. Many students took photos to remember the day. At night, bright ④ lit up the sky, and everyone cheered loudly.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

card - neighborhood - celebration - workers - thanked

Every year on May 1st, we celebrate Labor Day. It is a special ① to honor ② My family joins a small event in our ③ I make a colorful ④ for my father. Everyone smiles and shows they are happy with the workers' hard work. We always enjoy the day together.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- The (color) balloon flew high in the sky.
- We visited a (peace) village during our holiday.
- The students felt (exciting) before the school concert.
- Engy wore a (beauty) dress at the party.
- The (quiet) market was full of people.
- The tree is (red).
- We walked through a (crowded) street on Friday.
- I saw a (long) man carrying a big box.
- The students enjoyed an (amazed) science activity today.
- They watched a (wonder) movie last night.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. the colorful balloons flew in the air

▶

2. What food did amr bring to the family gathering

▶

3. i played a game of chess with kareem.

▶

4. the children like to play games like football and hide-and-seek

▶

5. where did the celebration take place

▶

6. a large cake was placed on an enormous table

▶

7. she felt excited when she saw her friends at the park

▶

8. we had an exciting day in the garden

▶

9. how do you celebrate your birthday

▶

10. who helped zein decorate the living room?

▶

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. Adam celebrated his birthday at home. (.....)
2. Adam's sister baked the birthday cake. (.....)
3. Adam's friends played games and ate snacks at the party. (.....)
4. Adam decorated the room with toys and books. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3Ms)

1. During the celebration, we watched people on the stage.
a) guests b) decorated c) perform d) fireworks
2. They shiny ribbons to make the house cheerful.
a) wrapped b) hung c) woke up d) cleaned
3. The family like stuffed grape leaves and grilled chicken.
a) socialized with friends b) performed music
c) ate special food d) played games
4. My mother baked a cake for the party.
a) delicious b) happy c) quiet d) noisy
5. Nesma felt when she lost her bag.
a) hard b) beautiful c) lazy d) sad
6. She sat on a chair in the class.
a) wood b) wooden c) cold d) hot

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

games - food - perform - gifts - friends

Last weekend, we had a wonderful family gathering. Everyone sat together, talked, and watched my uncle ① music. The ② was delicious, with grilled chicken and cake. We played fun ③ like chess and hide-and-seek. Everyone exchanged ④ and spent time with friends all day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (8Ms)

On May 1st, Lina and her family join a Labor Day celebration in their neighborhood. They watch workers being thanked for their hard work. Lina makes a colorful card for her father, while her brother, Adam, helps hang decorations and balloons. The children play games, and **everyone enjoys** the music. People share smiles, clap for the workers, and take photos. It is a joyful day, and everyone learns to respect the efforts of hardworking people.

A Choose the correct answer:

- On May 1st, Lina and her family join a in their neighborhood.
a) school b) park c) celebration d) picnic
- Lina made a colorful for her father to show appreciation.
a) gift b) card c) cake d) balloon

B Answer the following questions:

- What is the text mainly about?

►

- What activities did the children do during the celebration?

►

Test on Unit 4

5. How did the people show their appreciation for the workers during the event?



- 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. There were colorful and (shine) lights.
2. The playground was (cleaning) and bright.
3. We ate special food like (grill) chicken, and cake.
4. The family gathering was (amazed) yesterday.

- 6 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. many students took photos to remember the special day



2. what musical instrument did your uncle play



- 7 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below: (8Ms)

"End-of-Year Party"

► celebration - friends - games

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Revision on Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

1. Oyoum Mousa has fresh where visitors can drink and enjoy.
a) tents b) water springs c) deserts d) corals
2. Many tourists like to go in the sea to see fish and corals.
a) snorkeling b) hiking
c) horseback riding d) walking
3. Visitors can meet local Bedouins and learn about their
a) tents b) traditional life c) journey d) islands
4. It was a hot day, but we felt a cool by the beach.
a) breeze b) journey c) water spring d) tent
5. We took a across the canal to visit the other side.
a) plane b) car c) ferry d) train
6. The desert people are called
a) tourists b) drivers c) sailors d) Bedouins
7. Salma went in the mountains during her vacation.
a) hiking b) snorkeling c) ferry riding d) sailing
8. The boys laughed while flew above, making cheerful sounds.
a) horses b) fish c) seagulls d) sharks
9. People follow a that has been passed down for generations.
a) journey b) tradition c) school d) celebration
10. Tall grow near the water springs in Oyoum Mousa.
a) mountains b) corals c) tents d) palm trees
11. She saw beautiful while snorkeling in Dahab.
a) corals b) tents c) palm trees d) ferries
12. Many visitors take to remember their trip.
a) tents b) photos c) clothes d) baskets
13. Tourists enjoy along the Corniche in Port Said.
a) walking b) sailing c) cooking d) decorating

14. Bedouins show visitors their and explain their lifestyle.

- a) corals b) gifts c) tents d) ferries

15. The water in Oyoum Mousa comes from natural

- a) fountains b) water springs c) rivers d) taps

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

1. My friend is tired. He go to bed early.

- a) should b) shouldn't c) can't d) mustn't

2. You touch the corals in the sea.

- a) must b) can c) should d) shouldn't

3. The sun is very strong. You wear sunscreen and a hat.

- a) should b) shouldn't c) can't d) mustn't

4. He shouldn't near the pool.

- a) runs b) ran c) running d) run

5. Should we go hiking in the mountains? - Yes,

- a) should we b) shouldn't we c) we should d) we shouldn't

6. You see litter on the playground. You throw more trash there.

- a) should b) shouldn't c) can d) must

7. You want to stay healthy. You eat fruits and vegetables.

- a) should b) shouldn't c) can't d) mustn't

8. You eat too many sweets every day. You eat so much sugar.

- a) should b) must c) shouldn't d) can

9. You are going hiking in the mountains. You wear comfortable shoes.

- a) should b) shouldn't c) can't d) mustn't

10. The sea is calm and clear. You go scuba diving.

- a) mustn't b) can't c) shouldn't d) should

11. You shouldn't snorkeling now because the sea is rough.
a) goes b) going c) go d) went
12. Should she throw trash on the playground? No,
a) she should b) should she c) shouldn't she d) she shouldn't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

starfish - corals - mountains - snorkeling - enjoyed

During my vacation in Dahab, I explored many beautiful places. I went ① in the Blue Hole and enjoyed the clear water. I saw colorful fish and amazing ② The ③ surrounding the pools were great. I even found a giant ④ It was a fun and peaceful trip!

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

traditional - Bedouins - springs - tents - photos

Last weekend, we visited Oyoum Mousa in South Sinai. The fresh ① were clear and cool. Many tourists met local ② and saw their ③ while learning about their ④ way of life. Visitors also took photos to remember the peaceful desert and beautiful surroundings.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. You (shouldn't) study hard for the exams.
2. You (should) touch the starfish while snorkeling.
3. She should (tried) scuba diving.
4. You should always (is) careful while skating.
5. I should (visits) Dahab next vacation!
6. You should (wearing) sunscreen and a hat.
7. You (shouldn't) drink water when you feel thirsty.
8. They (shouldn't) wear warm clothes in winter.

9. They should (are) quiet in the library.
10. She should (takes) photos to remember her holiday.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. we took a ferry across the canal to visit the other side
▶
2. I had a wonderful time at the blue hole.
▶
3. how did the family cross the canal to Port foudad?
▶
4. did you visit a place by the sea
▶
5. the sea is calm and clear today
▶
6. they went scuba diving in the sea
▶
7. how was your mid-year vacation, salma?
▶
8. Who lives near oyoun Mousa, and visitors can meet
▶
9. the tourists slept in small tents under the stars
▶
10. the desert people are called bedouins.
▶

Test on Unit

5

Total

30

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



(2Ms)

1. Laila went to Dahab with her family. (.....)
2. She touched the corals while snorkeling. (.....)
3. Laila went hiking in the mountains. (.....)
4. She spent her holiday riding camels in the desert. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3Ms)

1. The tourists slept in small under the stars.
a) tents b) corals c) horses d) baskets
2. We went in the sea and saw many colorful fish.
a) horseback riding b) hiking
c) snorkeling d) camping
3. When I was, I climbed up the rocky mountain trail.
a) snorkeling b) hiking c) riding d) scuba diving
4. Your friend is cold. You give him a jacket.
a) should b) shouldn't c) can't d) mustn't
5. The sea is rough. You go swimming now.
a) should b) shouldn't c) can d) must
6. Should we take photos of the corals? - Yes, we
a) must b) can c) shouldn't d) should

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

breeze - ferry - cheerful - pictures - Corniche

We had an exciting family trip last weekend. We visited Port Said and walked along the ① The boys took many pictures while seagulls flew above, making a ② noise. We rode a ③ across the canal to Port Fouad. The ④ was cool, and we enjoyed fresh seafood by the shore.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (8Ms)

Tarek visited Oyoum Mousa, also called Moses Springs, in South Sinai, Egypt. He enjoyed the fresh water springs and admired the tall palm trees around the area. Tarek took many photos, walked near the springs, and learned about the fascinating history of the place. He also met local Bedouins, saw their tents, and discovered their traditional life. The peaceful desert and natural beauty made his visit very memorable and exciting.

A Choose the correct answer:

- Tarek took many near the springs to remember his visit.
a) books b) photos c) clothes d) gifts
- The opposite of the underlined word "traditional" is ".....".
a) modern b) old c) local d) ancient

B Answer the following questions:

3. What did Tarek do at Oyoum Mousa?

▶

4. Who did Tarek meet at Oyoum Mousa?

▶

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. It is raining outside. You (should) go out without an umbrella.
2. Noura's friend is lost in the park. She (shouldn't) help her find the way.
3. Your friend is sick. You should (wrote) him a get-well card.
4. Students should (are) polite in the classroom.

6 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. Oyoun mousa is a beautiful place in South Sinai

▶

2. i spent my holiday in Dahab with my family

▶

7 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below: (8Ms)

"A wonderful Vacation in Port Said"

▶ trip - ships - seagulls

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Part 2

Weekly Evaluations

Week 1: Based on Unit 1



Choose the correct answer:

1. People in the city live in tall
a) tents b) buildings c) forests d) deserts
2. A place in the desert that has water and trees is called an
a) island b) village c) airport d) oasis
3. City life has more like traffic and noise.
a) challenges b) blankets c) sandals d) deserts
4. Village people usually know all their
a) customers b) managers c) neighbors d) strangers
5. Buildings, roads, and cars are part of the city
a) environment b) camel c) plant d) cloud
6. Ahmed and Omar a small village last weekend.
a) visit b) visited c) visiting d) visits
7. Omar photos of the trees.
a) took b) take c) taking d) taked
8. The boys any noisy cars in the village.
a) didn't saw b) not saw c) didn't see d) didn't seeing
9. Salma finish her project last week?
a) Do b) Was c) Does d) Did
10. The boys excited about the trip.
a) was b) were c) is d) be

Week2: Based on Unit1

Choose the correct answer:

1. A person who catches fish for a living is called a
a) fisherman b) farmer c) sailor d) driver
2. Youssef and his grandfather took a small on the Nile.
a) bus b) truck c) boat d) plane
3. Farmers plant such as vegetables and fruits.
a) crops b) stones c) engines d) metals
4. The tall beside the river moved gently in the wind.
a) lamps b) mountains c) pillows d) palm trees
5. Sara saw a big flowing gently between the rocks in the mountains.
a) street b) stream c) train d) branch
6. Sami walked on small during his mountain trip.
a) paths b) boats c) tables d) machines
7. Wide and tall green trees covered the mountain area.
a) shops b) flags c) boxes d) fields
8. Palm trees usually grow in warm places near
a) rivers b) factories c) shops d) schools
9. A boat cannot move without someone to it.
a) break b) sail c) hide d) carry
10. The sound of the water made the place feel
a) busy b) peaceful c) dangerous d) boring

Week3: Based on Unit2

Choose the correct answer:

1. turn old things into new ones, like paper or plastic is to
a) reduce b) recycle c) pollute d) litter
2. People should the amount of waste they create.
a) reuse b) go green c) reduce d) remind

Revision

3. The Earth is also called our
a) planet b) surroundings c) tote bag d) bin
4. To protect the environment, we should try to
a) remind b) litter c) apply d) go green
5. Teachers often students to save water and electricity.
a) apply b) remind c) reduce d) go green
6. I don't throw trash on the street, do I burn it.
a) nor b) and c) so d) because
7. You can walk to school, take the bus.
a) and b) but c) so d) or
8. We recycle paper it helps save trees.
a) so b) or c) because d) and
9. I wanted to plant flowers, it was raining all day.
a) but b) and c) or d) because
10. He didn't study for the test, he failed it.
a) and b) nor c) so d) but

Week 4: Based on Unit 2

Choose the correct answer:

1. Our Earth gives us many important like water and electricity.
a) resources b) waste c) fans d) taps
2. We need to use resources so they don't run out.
a) care b) wisely c) kind d) warm
3. If we are not careful, water and gas may
a) switch off b) turn c) waste d) run out
4. Gas helps us cook and stay
a) cold b) warm c) wet d) dry
5. We can save water by the tap while brushing our teeth.
a) turning off b) running out c) wasting d) switching off

6. We can save electricity by lights and fans when leaving a room.
 a) turning on b) switching off c) running out d) wasting
7. We should never important resources like gas.
 a) care b) protect c) waste d) warm
8. Using resources carefully helps us the planet.
 a) warm b) turn off c) waste d) protect
9. Small daily actions can make a big for the Earth.
 a) fan b) waste c) difference d) tap
10. Using resources carefully is a way to show for the planet.
 a) care b) run out c) waste d) turn off

Week5: Based on Unit3

Choose the correct answer:

1. We have many supermarkets in our
 a) neighborhood b) garden c) school d) house
2. They prepared for the poor families to eat.
 a) food packages b) toys c) clothes d) books
3. In the market, they bought fresh like tomatoes and cucumbers.
 a) fans b) chairs c) bags d) vegetables
4. Kareem helped the elderly lady the stairs to her home.
 a) pack b) climb c) deliver d) buy
5. Noura felt and happy to prepare the picnic together.
 a) bored b) angry c) excited d) sleepy
6. I bought apple from the market.
 a) an b) some c) a few d) many
7. There are five on the table.
 a) water b) books c) rice d) milk
8. I drank a glass of for breakfast.
 a) apple b) meat c) egg d) milk

9. I want water to drink.
 a) some b) an c) a d) two
10. I ate a of bread for breakfast.
 a) carton b) bottle c) slice d) apple

Week 6: Based on Unit 3

Choose the correct answer:

- A carton of milk and a bottle of orange juice were put in a with ice.
 a) bag b) cooler c) basket d) tray
- Students brought food to with each other.
 a) share b) waste c) drink d) throw
- The teacher asked us to set up a good lunch.
 a) messy b) unhealthy c) healthy d) quick
- The cucumbers were fresh and
 a) red b) crunchy c) hot d) sour
- They placed bananas beside the fruits.
 a) a bunch of b) a slice of c) a piece of d) a glass of
- Being means doing the right things and helping others.
 a) messy b) lazy c) careless d) responsible
- At the picnic, the class captain opened a pack of biscuits for
 a) dessert b) breakfast c) lunch d) dinner
- After helping in the kitchen, Reem felt proud and happy because the meal was
 a) small b) messy c) quick d) delicious
- Our school held a in Al Azhar Park
 a) picnic b) basket c) break d) captain
- Everyone to join next time again.
 a) thanked b) studied c) ate d) promised

Week7: Based on Unit4

Choose the correct answer:

1. Musicians music for everyone to enjoy at the party.
 a) perform b) clap c) take d) socialize
2. People often photos at parties to remember the fun moments.
 a) write b) perform c) play d) take
3. Children like to play during parties or outdoors.
 a) clap b) hide-and-seek c) fireworks d) take photos
4. People often set off at New Year or national festivals.
 a) fireworks b) fences c) gifts d) games
5. During celebrations, friends and family and enjoy each other's company.
 a) write b) hide-and-seek c) socialize d) study
6. The balloons in the sky were bright and
 a) colorful b) run c) eat d) climb
7. The park was calm and
 a) busy b) peaceful c) loud d) exciting
8. The mountain view was and beautiful.
 a) amazing b) sad c) small d) kind
9. The kitten felt very in my hands.
 a) colorful b) exciting c) soft d) tall
10. The baby is very and loves to smile.
 a) boring b) angry c) happy d) sour

Week8: Based on Unit4

Choose the correct answer:

1. For special events, we often light on the tart.
 a) candles b) ribbons c) cards d) baskets

Revision

2. Students helped to the classroom for the party.
a) clean b) eat c) hide d) decorate
3. The teacher the gifts for the students with pretty paper.
a) ate b) held c) wrapped d) cleaned
4. We helped to colorful balloons in the hall.
a) hang b) clap c) eat d) read
5. She tied a red around the gift box.
a) candle b) pen c) ribbon d) plate
6. Everyone was smiling and feeling very at the event.
a) cheerful b) sad c) tired d) angry
7. Small toys and treats were handed out as to all the children.
a) ribbons b) candles c) giveaways d) plates
8. Many joined the party to celebrate Labor Day.
a) chairs b) guests c) gifts d) tables
9. The sun reflected on the decorations, making them sparkle.
a) shiny b) dull c) soft d) small
10. The sky was full of bright on Labor Day.
a) guests b) works c) fire d) fireworks

Week9: Based on Unit5

Choose the correct answer:

1. Oyoun Mousa is also called
a) Red Sea b) Palm Springs c) Desert Oasis d) Moses Springs
2. Long ago, travelers drank water from the desert
a) springs b) tents c) rivers d) lakes
3. Visitors can meet local in the desert and learn about their life.
a) tourists b) Bedouins c) teachers d) merchants
4. In Dahab, Salma went in the sea.
a) hiking b) horseback riding c) scuba diving d) shopping

5. Salma and her family went in the mountains.
 a) hiking b) scuba diving c) snorkeling d) fishing
6. You wear a hat when it is sunny.
 a) don't b) shouldn't c) do d) should
7. He touch the corals because they are living animals.
 a) should b) shouldn't c) do d) can
8. They go snorkeling because the sea is rough.
 a) should b) do c) shouldn't d) can
9. I wear sunscreen at the beach?
 a) Should b) Am c) Does d) Can't
10. He swim alone in the deep sea.
 a) should b) shouldn't c) do d) can

Week10: Based on Unit5

Choose the correct answer:

1. My family walked along the in Port Said.
 a) Corniche b) mountain c) oasis d) desert
2. We took the across the Suez Canal to Port Fouad.
 a) train b) car c) ferry d) plane
3. The trip was joyful and
 a) boring b) memorable c) sad d) dull
4. In Dahab, the water at the Blue Hole is very
 a) clear b) cloudy c) hard d) dull
5. It is perfect for to see the underwater life.
 a) climbing b) hiking c) riding d) snorkeling
6. The mountains around the pools made the place look
 a) amazing b) boring c) dull d) soft
7. The Blue Hole is fun, peaceful, and full of
 a) sleep b) adventure c) work d) fear
8. Seagulls flying above made a sound.
 a) cheerful b) silent c) scary d) soft

Revision

9. It was a hot day, but we felt a cool by the beach.
a) water b) sand c) breath d) breeze
10. The water is very clear and for snorkeling.
a) hot b) cold c) perfect d) bad

Week11: Based on Unit6

Story

Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Omar lived in a quiet village. (.....)
2. Sami is Omar's best friend. (.....)
3. The kite didn't fly high. (.....)

Choose the correct answer:

1. The kite drifted across the
a) river b) village c) field d) market
2. Omar had a basket of sweet
a) apples b) bananas c) oranges d) dates
3. The kite flew than the palm trees.
a) lower b) faster c) slower d) higher

Week12: Based on Unit6

Story

Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The kite landed in a tall tree. (.....)
2. The boys were happy at the end of the story. (.....)
3. The old man used a long stick to get the kite. (.....)

Choose the correct answer:

- They crossed a bridge over the river.
a) stone b) rope c) metal d) wooden
- Sami stepped forward
a) loudly b) shyly c) angrily d) happily
- The story teaches us about
a) kindness b) giving up c) being unkind d) running away

Week13: General

Choose the correct answer:

- A desert is a dry place with plants. There aren't many.
a) many b) few c) tall d) new
- Did you your cousin last weekend?
a) seeing b) saw c) see d) sees
- Plastic, paper, and metal can be
a) recycled b) replayed c) avoided d) finished
- We stayed at home it was too hot to go out.
a) and b) nor c) so d) because
- Volunteers usually people in need.
a) leave b) ignore c) help d) run
- We have bread for breakfast.
a) some b) any c) a d) an
- At the festival, the students performed songs in the school
a) food b) band c) chess d) hide-and-peek
- Omar felt when he lost his pencil case. S B
a) sad b) happy c) noisy d) great
- Oyoun Mousa has fresh water
a) tents b) springs c) Bedouins d) buildings
- You are very tired. You go to bed late.
a) should b) are c) can d) shouldn't



Choose the correct answer:

1. You wear comfortable shoes for a long walk.
a) shouldn't b) can't c) aren't d) should
2. I felt a cool while walking near the sea.
a) house b) street c) breeze d) fire
3. My mom and I wrapped the for all the guests.
a) room b) giveaways c) TV d) class
4. The sports day made all the students cheer and clap.
a) boring b) exciting c) cold d) bad
5. I want to buy bananas.
a) some b) a c) any d) an
6. We need apples for everyone.
a) a kilo of b) a slice of c) a piece of d) a bar of
7. Our Earth gives us many important like water and gas.
a) garden b) fur c) fans d) resources
8. I didn't call him, did I send a message.
a) or b) nor c) and d) so
9. The fields, trees, and stream made the place feel very
a) peaceful b) cold c) boring d) dark
10. The cat on the roof last night.
a) sleeps b) sleep c) slept d) sleeping

Part 3

General Tests

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Al-Azhar Test

1

Marks: 40

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

1. Every day at school, our class captain helps keep things (organized - messy - noisy) in the cafeteria.
2. We take cool drinks from the (classroom - backpack - cooler).
3. Lunchtime is always fun and orderly because everyone (ignores/ follows / breaks) the rules.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (4Ms)

friendly - visit - Bedouins - springs

Sami : Our journey to the desert was amazing!

Lina : Really? What did you ① there?

Sami : We visited water ② in the middle of the sand.

Lina : That sounds beautiful!

Sami : We also met the ③ who live a traditional life.

Lina : Do they live in tents?

Sami : Yes, and they were very ④ and welcoming.

General Tests

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. We should always (throw away - recycle - break - lose) paper and plastic to protect the environment.
2. In the village, people live a simple (destroy - ignore - noisy - traditional) life.
3. They brought umbrellas, (nor - so - because - or) it was raining outside.
4. She (didn't - does - do - will) go to school yesterday.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

(8Ms)

1. I have 3 waters in my bag. (.....)
2. I stayed home, so I was sick. (.....)
3. They should play outside in the rain. (.....)
4. We walk to school yesterday morning. (.....)

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

(10Ms)

We must protect Earth's resources, as they can run out. It is important to save resources by using them wisely. Simple actions help, like turning off the tap while brushing our teeth and switching off lights and fans when we leave the room. Every small effort counts. By protecting water, energy, and other natural resources, we can help the planet stay healthy for everyone.

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Earth's resources can run out if we do not use them wisely. (.....)
2. Turning off the tap while brushing our teeth does not help save resources. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

3. We must protect Earth's (buildings - animals - resources - roads) because they can run out.
4. Simple actions help, like (running fast - leaving the lights on - wasting water - turning off the tap) while brushing our teeth.
5. By protecting water, energy, and other natural resources, we can help the planet stay (healthy - dirty - cold - empty).

- 6 Write a short paragraph of (4) sentences using the following guiding words: (8Ms)

"Protecting Earth's Resources"

► save - wisely - environment - natural

Al-Azhar Test

2

Marks: 40

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

1. In our village, the environment is (dirty - noisy - clean) and peaceful.
2. All the neighbors live together like one big (family - school - market).
3. We use the (rivers - wells - fountain) for fresh water every day.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (4Ms)

elderly - packages - delivery - bags

Sara : I went with my dad around our neighborhood today.

Mina : What were you doing?

Sara : We helped with a vegetable's ①

Mina : Who received the delivery?

Sara : An ② person who couldn't carry heavy ③

Mina : Did you give anything else?

Sara : Yes, we also brought food ④ to her home.

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. The (homework - weather - food - soil) was very cold yesterday, so we wore warm coats.
2. Many machines in our school need (cloth - seeds - snacks - electricity) to work.

3. We need (a - an - a carton of - two) milk for the recipe.
4. My teacher is always (kind - busy - lazy - rude) and helpful.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes: (8Ms)

1. I don't like apples, or do I like oranges. (.....)
2. Omar does his homework three hours ago. (.....)
3. Did she went to school yesterday? (.....)
4. You shouldn't eats too much candy. (.....)

5 Read the text and answer the questions: (10Ms)

During our family gathering, everyone is happy and excited. We exchange gifts and play a game together. Some children perform music for everyone, and we all clap and cheer. We eat special food prepared by our parents and grandparents. The house is full of laughter and joy. Family gatherings are fun because we share love, happiness, and special moments with each other.

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Family gatherings are boring because everyone is quiet. (.....)
2. During the family gathering, children perform music for everyone. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

3. During our family gathering, we exchange (gifts - books - pens - clothes).

General Tests

4. We eat (fast - regular - cold - special) food prepared by our parents and grandparents.

5. Everyone claps and (run - sleep - cheer - cry) when the children perform music.

6

Write a short paragraph of (4) sentences using the following guiding words: (8Ms)

"Life in Our Village"

► neighbors - wells - environment - peaceful

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Al-Azhar Test

3

Marks: 40

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

1. We must take care of our planet by learning to (recycle - throw - break).
2. When we recycle materials like paper, plastic, and glass, we help keep the (classroom - school - Earth) clean.
3. We can also (reuse - waste - lose) bottles in creative ways.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

(4Ms)

energy - soil - planet - protect

Nora : We learned about energy in the science class today.

Adam : Really? What kind of ① ?

Nora : We talked about sunlight and how it helps our ②

Adam : Sunlight is important for plants and ③

Nora : Yes, it keeps the environment healthy.

Adam : That's why we must ④ our world from danger.

Nora : Yes, we should do it.

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. The children were happy during the school (wind - cooler - tap - celebration).

General Tests

2. We took a (ferry - book - lesson - apartment) to cross the river.
3. He (should - shouldn't - do - don't) watch too much TV.
4. (Did - Do - Does - Doing) she visit her grandmother last weekend?

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes: (8Ms)

1. He is a crowded person, we love him. (.....)
2. Did they played football after school? (.....)
3. I have a pens in my bag. (.....)
4. We recycle paper, to it helps save trees. (.....)

5 Read the text and answer the questions: (10Ms)

Last summer, we went on a journey to the desert. We visited fresh water springs and met the Bedouins. They showed us their traditional life in tents under the hot sun. Tall palm trees surrounded the area, giving shade and beauty to the desert. We learned how the Bedouins live simply and happily, and we enjoyed drinking fresh water from the springs.

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The Bedouins live in tents in the desert. (.....)
2. We drank water from a river during our journey. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

3. Last summer, we went on a (market - picnic - school trip - journey) to the desert.

4. Tall (palm trees - mountains - palm trees - rocks) surrounded the area, giving shade and beauty.
5. The Bedouins showed us their (busy - modern - traditional - noisy) life.

6 Write a short paragraph of (4) sentences using the following guiding words: (8Ms)

"Family Gatherings"

► gifts - music - special food - happy

Handwriting practice area with six horizontal lines for writing a paragraph.

Al-Azhar Test

4

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

1. During the school celebration, we wear (special clothes - uniforms - pajamas).
2. Teachers ask us to take (notes - books - photos) to remember the day.
3. Everyone works together to make the celebration (quiet and boring - bright and cheerful - slow and sad).

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (4Ms)

giveaways - guests - decorated - happy

Hadi : Hi Lara! How was your day at school?

Lara : We ① the room today.

Hadi : Was it for a party?

Lara : Yes, many ② were coming.

Hadi : What else?

Lara : We wrapped the ③ nicely.

Hadi : That must have taken time.

Lara : It was ok because everyone felt ④

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. The food (library - school - delivery - park) arrived at our house on time.
2. Everyone enjoyed the games at the (family gathering - neighbor - lesson - teacher).
3. We (bought - buy - buys - buying) a new toy from the shop yesterday.
4. I don't like ice cream, (to - so - because - nor) do I like cake.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes: (8Ms)

1. You shouldn't drink more water. (.....)
2. My sister buy a gift for me last weekend. (.....)
3. He studied hard, but he passed the test. (.....)
4. I visit my grandmother last weekend. (.....)

5 Read the text and answer the questions: (10Ms)

On Wednesday, our school held a picnic in Al Azhar Park. Our class captain helped keep things organized in the cafeteria before we left. At the park, we lined up at the snack station to choose food and took drinks from the cooler. Everyone played games in the park. We shared food with kindness, and the sandwiches were crunchy and delicious. It was a fun and happy day for all.

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The class captain helped keep things organized in the cafeteria. (.....)
2. The sandwiches were soft and cold. (.....)

General Tests

B Choose the correct answer:

3. On Wednesday, our school held a (meeting - lesson - party - picnic) in Al Azhar Park.
4. At the park, we lined up at the (library - classroom - snack station - playground) to choose food.
5. Everyone shared food with (playground - cafeteria - garden - kindness).

6

Write a short paragraph of (4) sentences using the following guiding words: (8Ms)

"Recycling and Reusing"

► materials - paper - bottles - clean

Handwriting practice area with dashed lines for writing.

Marks: 30

General Test

5

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.



(2Ms)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Maha compared life in the city and the village in her project. (.....)
2. People in villages live in tall buildings and use buses. (.....)
3. City people enjoy having many shops around them. (.....)
4. Maha learned that every place has no challenges. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3Ms)

1. It's important to plastic bottles instead of throwing them away.
a) apply b) reuse c) plant d) read
2. A/An is a green place with water in the desert.
a) river b) village c) oasis d) building
3. The volunteers carried filled with rice, beans, and canned food.
a) elderly b) vegetables c) neighborhood d) food packages
4. The park is very in the morning.
a) loudly b) peace c) peaceful d) dirt
5. we wear sunscreen at the beach?
a) Should b) Does c) Are d) Am
6. I would like tomatoes in my sandwich.
a) a piece of b) an c) a d) some

- 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

seafood - Corniche - ferry - cheerful - seagulls

Last weekend, my family and I visited Port Said. We walked along the
 ① and watched ships near the Suez Canal. The boys laughed
 while ② flew above, making a cheerful noise. Then we took
 the ③ to Port Fouad. We enjoyed tasty ④ by
 the shore.

- 4 Read the text and answer the questions: (8Ms)

My name is Sara, and I celebrated Labor Day with my family in our neighborhood. We joined a special event to honor workers for their hard work. I made a colorful card for my father and teacher to thank them. People clapped and smiled as workers were appreciated. Everyone enjoyed the celebration, shared happy moments, and realized how important it is to respect and value workers every day. It was a joyful and memorable day for everyone.

- A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Sara made a colorful card for her during the Labor Day celebration.

a) friends	b) neighbors
c) father and teacher	d) workers only
- The underlined word "memorable" means

a) boring	b) forget
c) ordinary	d) worth remembering

E Answer the following question:

3. How did Sara feel during the celebration?

▶

4. What did people do at the Labor Day celebration?

▶

5. Give a suitable title to the text.

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. Did you (went) to the market yesterday?

2. This (wood) chair looks beautiful.

3. I want to eat (a) apple.

4. You (should) run in the street.

6 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. he walked in the city at night

▶

2. What did youssef learn from his grandfather

▶

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below: (8Ms)

"Caring for Our Planet"

▶ **reduce - reuse - recycle**

.....

.....

.....

.....

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. Taking care of animals and plants is very important. (.....)
2. We should sometimes hurt animals to protect them. (.....)
3. Plants need sunlight, water, and clean soil to grow strong. (.....)
4. Planting trees and flowers helps keep our planet unhealthy. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3Ms)

1. The flows through Egypt and is very important for farming.
a) city b) building c) river d) oasis
2. The teacher asked us to what we learned in class when doing the project.
a) apply b) recycle c) reduce d) reuse
3. Every weekend, we visit the to help people in need.
a) vegetables b) neighborhood
c) stairs d) food packages
4. He ate a of cake at the party.
a) an b) a c) piece d) bar
5. I have a kite that flies high in the sky.
a) coloring b) colors c) color d) colorful
6. You should scuba diving.
a) try b) trying c) tries d) tried

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

peaceful - stream - fields - bored - birds

I went to the mountains with my family last weekend. We saw tall green trees and wide ① all around. A clear ② flowed gently between the rocks, and we heard ③ singing in the distance. We walked along small paths and enjoyed being far from the city, feeling ④ and relaxed.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (8Ms)

Kareem is talking about his school project on saving natural resources. He said we should use water, electricity, and gas wisely so they don't run out. He suggested turning off the tap while brushing teeth and switching off lights and fans when leaving a room. He also explained that even small changes at school can make a big difference. Kareem reminded everyone to use resources carefully at home. Small actions every day can help keep our planet clean and healthy.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or ,d:

1. We should turn off the when we leave the room.

- | | |
|----------|--------------------|
| a) tap | b) lights and fans |
| c) books | d) shoes |

2. The opposite of the underlined word "run out" is ".....".

- | | | | |
|-----------|--------|---------|---------|
| a) finish | b) use | c) save | d) last |
|-----------|--------|---------|---------|

B Answer the following question:

3. What did Kareem suggest about saving water at home?

▶

General Tests

4. Why should we use water, electricity, and gas carefully?

▶

5. Summarize the text in two sentences.

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. We stayed at home (so) it was too hot to go out.

2. He ate two (slice) of pizza for lunch.

3. My sister (study) English yesterday.

4. I have three (book) in my bag.

6 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. On may 1st, we celebrate labor Day.

▶

2. why did Salma say people shouldn't touch corals

▶

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below: (8Ms)

"A Day in the Village"

▶ animals - fields - market

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

General Test

7

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. Aya spent her mid-year vacation in Dahab with her family. (.....)
2. She saw starfish while snorkeling. (.....)
3. Aya told everyone not to touch the corals. (.....)
4. She did not enjoy her holiday. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3Ms)

1. I use a camera to to remember special moments.
a) take photos b) perform c) decorate d) read
2. We must not throw on the ground; it makes our school dirty.
a) resource b) litter c) water d) light
3. Be careful when you the stairs to the first floor.
a) deliver b) promise c) climb d) receive
4. She has orange in her bag.
a) some b) any c) a d) an
5. Ali football with his friends last week.
a) plays b) play c) played d) playing
6. You can ride a bike walk to school.
a) and b) nor c) or d) so

General Tests

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: **(2Ms)**

paper - bins - pollution - emails - tote bags

You can help keep our planet clean. You should use less paper. Write on both sides of the page. Send **①** instead of letters. Walk, ride a bike, or share cars to reduce **②** Use **③** not plastic. Throw litter in **④** Remind others to protect nature.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: **(8Ms)**

Amr went on a trip to the Nile River with his grandfather last Friday. They took a small boat, and Amr helped his grandfather sail. He saw fishermen catching fish and green farms with vegetables and fruits. Tall palm trees and children playing on the riverbank made the view beautiful. Amr wore his hat under the hot sun and enjoyed bread, cheese, and cucumbers while listening to stories about the Nile. He felt excited to visit the Nile again soon.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Amr helped his grandfather the small boat on the Nile River.
a) drive b) sail c) fly d) run
- Amr wore his because the sun was hot.
a) shoes b) jacket c) hat d) scarf

B Answer the following question:

3. What is the main idea of the text?

▶

4. What did Amr see while he was on the Nile River?

▶

5. How did Amr feel at the end of the day?

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. She (buy) a new bag yesterday.
2. He bought one (bottles) of milk for breakfast.
3. Kamal didn't study, (because) he failed the test.
4. The view of the Nile is (amazed).

6 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. why do you think family gatherings are important

▶

2. air and water pollution harm animals and plants

▶

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below: (8Ms)

"Helping Mom at Home"

▶ kitchen - cooking meals - washing the dishes

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. The school picnic took place on Tuesday. (.....)
2. Nada helped set up a healthy lunch with vegetables and fruits. (.....)
3. She placed sandwiches and cookies in the cooler. (.....)
4. Everyone had a fun and happy day outdoors. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3Ms)

1. The weather is very today, so we don't need our jackets.
a) cold b) rainy c) warm d) windy
2. A was catching fish with his net.
a) seller b) teacher c) nurse d) fisherman
3. We need to the amount of waste we make every day.
a) reduce b) produce c) apply d) deliver
4. She doesn't like peaches, does she like bananas.
a) or b) nor c) so d) and
5. There are eight on the counter.
a) milk b) cheese c) apples d) water
6. I live in a village with many tall palm trees.
a) peace b) beauty c) short d) peaceful

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

traditional - Bedouins - history - water springs - enjoyed

Manar spent a week at Oyoum Mousa in South Sinai. She enjoyed the fresh ① and tall palm trees. She took photos, walked near the springs, and learned about the ② of Moses and his journey. Manar also met local ③ and discovered their ④ life.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (8Ms)

Last Friday, Yara celebrated her birthday at home. In the morning, she woke up excited and started preparing for the big day. With her sister's help, she cleaned the living room and decorated it with colorful balloons. Her father helped hang shiny ribbons and bright lights. Yara's mother baked a delicious cake, and Yara put candles on top. She wrapped the giveaways for her friends. Everyone wore party hats and joined the fun.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Yara celebrated her birthday at
 a) school b) the park c) home d) the library
- The underlined pronoun "Her" refers to
 a) Yara's sister b) Yara's brother
 c) Yara's mother d) Yara

B Answer the following question:

- How did Yara and her family prepare for her birthday celebration?

▶

General Tests

4. What activities did Yara and her friends enjoy during the party?

▶

5. Give a suitable title to the text.

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. Hadeer felt (sad) when she bought a new dress.

2. He is eating (a) egg for breakfast.

3. Last Monday, our school (hold) a trip to the Pyramids.

4. Nour stayed home (or) he was not feeling well.

6 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. lina went on a trip to the mountains

▶

2. did you visit a place with springs

▶

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below: (8Ms)

"Honoring Our Workers"

▶ Labor Day - appreciate - colorful cards

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Marks: 30

General Test

9

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.



(2Ms)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Zein decorated the living room with colorful balloons. (.....)
2. His mother baked a delicious cake for his birthday. (.....)
3. Zein celebrated his birthday at the park with his friends. (.....)
4. Zein wrapped giveaways because he wanted to share his happiness. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3Ms)

1. Our teaches us English every day.
a) doctor b) nurse c) teacher d) dentist
2. The tall near the Nile gave them cool shade.
a) sails b) nets c) boats d) palm trees
3. Factories cause air when they release smoke into the sky.
a) pollution b) environment c) planet d) weather
4. Mona was hungry, she ate a sandwich.
a) because b) so c) or d) nor
5. I want to buy a of biscuits.
a) slice b) any c) an d) packet
6. I watch the sunrise yesterday.
a) don't b) doesn't c) didn't d) do

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

sail - fishermen - riverbank - palm trees - boat

Last Sunday, Walid went on a trip to the Nile River with his uncle. He helped sail their small ① and saw ② catching fish. They explored green farms with vegetables and fruits, tall ③ , and children playing on the ④ Youssef enjoyed the calm water and beautiful scenery.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (8Ms)

I was watching a TV program about our Earth and its important resources like water, electricity, and gas. The program showed how we can save water by turning off taps, save electricity by switching off lights and fans, and use gas carefully. It reminded me to tell my family and friends to protect these resources. Small actions every day help keep our planet clean and healthy. We all have a responsibility to care for the environment.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The program showed how we can save by turning off taps.
a) light b) soil c) water d) electricity
- To protect our planet, we must use water, electricity, and gas
a) carefully b) quickly c) carelessly d) sadly

B Answer the following question:

- What was the TV program about?



.....

4. How can we save water and electricity at home every day?

▶

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. The teacher didn't shout, (or) did she get angry.

2. My grandparents (move) to this house in 2010.

3. I have (any) bread for breakfast.

4. The (excited) sports day made all the students cheer.

6 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. how do you celebrate your birthday

▶

2. people in the village follow a traditional life

▶

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) words using the words below: (8Ms)

"Exploring the Beauty of South Sinai"

▶ snorkeling - scuba diving - hiking

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Marks: 30

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. Jana went on a trip to Alexanderia with her family. (.....)
2. Jana walked along the Corniche with her friends. (.....)
3. Seagulls flew above them, making cheerful noises. (.....)
4. Jana enjoyed the fresh breeze and the beautiful view. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3Ms)

1. The sky was full of bright on Labor Day.
a) guests b) fireworks c) photos d) birthdays
2. Samar bought a dress for the school party.
a) wooden b) quiet c) beautiful d) angry
3. Our class the chairs before the celebration started.
a) delivered b) played c) promised d) arranged
4. She saw dog in the park.
a) an b) some c) a d) any
5. He doesn't like fish, does he like chicken.
a) or b) nor c) so d) because
6. Did Hady to Alexandria last summer?
a) travels b) traveled c) traveling d) travel

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

birds - photos - weather - river - excited

Adham spent last weekend visiting a small village with his family. The
 ① was sunny, and he felt excited. They walked beside the
 ② and enjoyed the fresh air. Adham took ③ of
 flowers, trees, and houses. He also saw tall trees and many ④
 in a nearby forest.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (8Ms)

Two weeks ago, Adam and Lina prepared food packages for poor families in their neighborhood. Early in the morning, they went to the market with their mother to buy fresh vegetables and fruits. Adam chose a kilo of apples, while Lina picked a kilo of oranges. They also bought tomatoes, cucumbers, and bread. After shopping, they packed all the food carefully into bags to help those in need.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Adam and Lina prepared for poor families in their neighborhood.

- | | |
|------------------|----------|
| a) food packages | b) books |
| c) bags | c) pens |

2. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| a) people in need | b) poor families |
| c) classmates | d) Adam and Lina |

B Answer the following question:

3. What is the text mainly about?

▶

General Tests

4. Why did Adam and Lina go to the market?

▶

5. What types of food did they buy and pack for the families?

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. They were tired, (because) they went to sleep early.

2. Sama (walk) to the store yesterday.

3. Mourad bought two (kilo) of oranges from the market.

4. Should I (taking) photos of the corals?

6 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. the sun is very strong in dahab.

▶

2. What did zein's mother make yesterday

▶

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) words using the words below: (8Ms)

"Helping People Around Us"

▶ elderly persons - sharing food - family

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Marks: 30

General Test

11

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. The village has wide fields where children play every day. (.....)
2. The place is noisy and crowded. (.....)
3. The neighbors are friendly and help each other. (.....)
4. Life in the village is simple, happy, and full of kindness. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3Ms)

1. We walked a long to reach the park.
a) distance b) food c) chair d) book
2. Our class eats lunch together in the
a) bank b) museum c) cafeteria d) bedroom
3. The sun makes the room feel in the afternoon.
a) empty b) cold c) noisy d) warm
4. I bought egg from the market.
a) a b) an c) some d) a bottle of
5. Did they football yesterday?
a) play b) plays c) playing d) played
6. We don't waste water, do we leave the tap running.
a) to b) so c) nor d) but

General Tests

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

lights - wisely - planet - teeth - quickly

Natural resources are very important. We should use water, electricity, and other energy **①** to protect the Earth. Turning off **②** when we leave a room and saving water while brushing our **③** are simple ways to help. Every small action counts. By using resources carefully, we can keep our **④** clean, safe, and full of life for everyone.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (8Ms)

Last summer, we visited Port Said by the Suez Canal. We walked along the corniche and enjoyed the beautiful view of the shore. Many seagulls were flying over the water, and we could hear their calls. We also saw colorful corals near the edge of the canal. The day was sunny and bright. Everyone enjoyed walking, taking photos, and watching the boats pass by. It was a happy and exciting visit by the sea.

A Choose the correct answer:

- We walked along the and enjoyed the view of the shore.
a) corniche b) park c) street d) bridge
- Many were flying over the water.
a) seagulls b) ducks c) cats d) boats

B Answer the following questions:

3. Where did they visit last summer?

▶

4. What did they see near the edge of the canal?

▶

5. What activities did everyone enjoy during the visit?

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. They should (helping) their teacher in the classroom.

2. Did you (went) to the park yesterday?

3. She brought an umbrella (so) it was raining.

4. We need (an) cheese for dinner.

6 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. i have two bottles in my bag

▶

2. can you give me this book

▶

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) words using the words below: (8Ms)

"A Fun Day at the Park"

▶ friends - games - fun activities

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. Everyone gathered in the garden yard to enjoy the decorations. (.....)
2. They decorated the place with balloons and flowers. (.....)
3. The fireworks sparkled in the sky at night. (.....)
4. The students stayed alone and didn't socialize with friends. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3Ms)

1. We walked along the to enjoy the fresh air by the sea.
a) forest b) corniche c) classroom d) library
2. The farmer built a strong to keep the animals safe.
a) fence b) bed c) phone d) cloud
3. I made a to help my friend study for the test.
a) gate b) holiday c) ticket d) promise
4. I bought two from the store.
a) milk b) sugar c) pens d) rice
5. We don't waste water, do we leave the tap running.
a) and b) so c) or d) nor
6. Did they the match yesterday?
a) watching b) watched c) watch d) watches

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

guests - joyful - photos - candles - cake

Last weekend, we had a wonderful birthday party at my house. Many ① arrived with big smiles and colorful gifts. We decorated the table with bright ② that made the room look cheerful. Everyone gathered to sing and celebrate. We also took ③ to remember the special day. It was a fun and ④ party for all.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (8Ms)

Pollution is a big problem for our planet. Factories and cars use a lot of energy and release smoke that harms the environment. We must take care of the air, water, and land to keep the planet clean and safe. Everyone can help by saving energy, planting trees, and reducing waste. Small actions, like walking instead of using a car, can make a big difference. Let's protect our planet and keep it healthy for the future.

A Choose the correct answer:

- Factories and cars use a lot of and release smoke.
a) energy b) water c) sugar d) paper
- Small actions, like instead of using a car, can help the planet.
a) eating b) sleeping c) walking d) running

B Answer the following questions:

- What is a big problem for our planet?



General Tests

4. How can everyone help the environment?



5. Why should we protect the planet?



5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. She is always (colorful) and helps everyone.

2. He shouldn't (running) in the classroom.

3. We finished our homework, (or) we played outside.

4. They (visit) the museum last Saturday.

6 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. look at the big red balloon



2. can you help me with this puzzle



7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) words using the words below: (8Ms)

"A Day in the Desert"

► Bedouins - hot - tents



Handwriting practice area with five sets of dotted lines for writing.

Part 4

Listening Scripts



Test 1 on Unit 1

Maha and Salma worked on a school project. Maha wrote about the life in the city. Salma wrote about the desert. She explained how people lived in tents and traveled on camels. They learned that every place has advantages and challenges. The project helped them understand how people adapt to their environments.



Test 2 on Unit 2

Ali cares for our planet. At the store, he carries his own tote bag. At home, he always turns off the tap to save water while brushing. He chooses to walk to school to reduce air pollution. As his teacher says, these small actions make a big difference for Earth.



Test 3 on Unit 3

Our class had a wonderful picnic at Al Azhar Park. We arranged fruits, vegetables, and snacks like biscuits and chocolate. Everyone drank milk and juice and enjoyed their healthy lunch. Afterward, we gave leftover food to absent students. It was a fun day full of sharing, teamwork, and smiles.



Test 4 on Unit 4

"Last Friday, Adam celebrated his birthday at home. He decorated the living room with colorful balloons and shiny ribbons. His mother baked a delicious cake, and he put candles on it. When his friends arrived, they played games, ate snacks, and enjoyed the fun. It was a wonderful celebration.



Test 5 on Unit 5

Last holiday, Laila went to Dahab with her family. She went scuba diving and saw many starfish. She also went snorkeling and admired colorful corals, but she didn't touch them. Laila went hiking in the mountains and rode horses by the beach. It was a fun and exciting vacation!



General Test 1

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

Every day at school, our class captain helps keep things organized in the cafeteria. She guides us as we line up at the snack station to choose our food. We also take cool drinks from the cooler. Lunchtime is always fun and orderly because everyone follows the rules.



General Test 2

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

In our village, the environment is clean and peaceful. All the neighbors live together like one big family. We use the wells for fresh water every day. Everyone helps keep the area safe and tidy. Life in the village feels simple, happy, and full of kindness.



General Test 3

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

We must take care of our planet by learning to recycle, reduce, and reuse. When we recycle materials like paper, plastic, and glass, we help keep the Earth clean. We can also reuse bottles in creative ways. Small actions from everyone can make a big difference to our beautiful world.

Listening Scripts

General Test 4

(خاص بالأزهر الشريف)

During the school celebration, we wear special clothes and feel excited. Teachers ask us to take photos to remember the day. We clap happily when the music starts and enjoy the fun activities. Everyone works together to make the celebration bright and cheerful for all the students and teachers around.

General Test 5

My name is Maha, and I worked on a project comparing life in the city and the village. I learned how villagers farm, raise animals, and know their neighbors, while city people live in tall buildings, use buses and cars, and enjoy many shops. Every place has advantages and challenges.

General Test 6

Our planet needs our help. Taking care of animals and plants is very important. We should give animals food, water, and a safe place to live, and never hurt them. Plants need sunlight, water, and clean soil. Planting trees and flowers makes the world beautiful and keeps our planet healthy for everyone.

General Test 7

Aya spent her mid-year vacation in Dahab with her family. She went scuba diving and saw many starfish. She also tried snorkeling and admired the colorful corals. Aya reminded everyone not to touch the corals because they are living sea animals. She had a fun and exciting holiday.

General Test 8

On Monday, Nada went to a school picnic in Al Azhar Park. She helped set up a healthy

lunch with vegetables, fruits, and snacks. She placed milk and orange juice in a cooler with ice. Everyone enjoyed the food, shared with friends, and had a fun and happy day outdoors.

General Test 9

Last Friday, Zein celebrated his birthday at home. He woke up excited and helped his family decorate the living room with balloons, ribbons, and bright lights. His mother baked a delicious cake, and he put candles on it. Zein wrapped giveaways for his friends to share his happiness.

General Test 10

Jana spent last weekend with her family on a trip to Port Said. They walked along the Corniche and watched ships sailing near the Suez Canal. The boys laughed and took pictures while seagulls flew above, making cheerful noises. Jana enjoyed the fresh breeze and beautiful views of the canal.

General Test 11

Our village has wide fields where children play every day. The place is peaceful and quiet, and everyone feels relaxed when they walk there. The neighbors are friendly and always help each other. Life in the village is simple, happy, and full of kindness.

General Test 12

During the celebration, everyone gathered in the garden yard to enjoy the colorful decorations. We helped decorate the place with lights and ribbons. At night, we watched bright fireworks sparkle in the sky. It was a great chance to socialize with friends, laugh together, and make happy memories.

Part 5

Answers Key

Answers Key



Scan and check the "Student Book" model answers file here.

امسح الكود للاطلاع على ملف إجابات كتاب الطالب النموذجية.

Grade 4 Supplementary Part 1

Revision on Unit 1

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Vocabulary)

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1- c) tents | 2- b) peaceful |
| 3- d) fields | 4- a) environment |
| 5- b) oasis | 6- b) neighbors |
| 7- c) paths | 8- b) crops |
| 9- c) distance | 10- b) riverbank |
| 11- c) city | 12- c) palm trees |
| 13- d) fisherman | |

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Grammar)

- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1- c) traveled | 2- d) did |
| 3- c) lived | 4- a) took |
| 5- a) watch | 6- c) bought |
| 7- d) visit | 8- c) didn't |
| 9- a) Did | 10- d) like |
| 11- a) see | 12- c) didn't |

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- | | |
|-----------|----------|
| 1- tents | 2- wells |
| 3- camels | 4- oasis |

4- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| 1- buildings | 2- shops |
| 3- busy | 4- challenges |

5- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- | | |
|----------|------------|
| 1- crops | 2- animals |
| 3- quiet | 4- simply |

6- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- | | |
|----------------|------------------|
| 1- worked | 2- explained |
| 3- travelled | 4- didn't finish |
| 5- lived | 6- used |
| 7- helped | 8- didn't go |
| 9- did you put | 10- know |

7- Punctuate the following:

1. I visited the desert last year.
2. Did your friend ride a camel?
3. Life in the city is noisy.
4. My grandfather told us interesting stories.
5. What did you learn about the desert?
6. The Nile River flows through Egypt.
7. Do you like village or city?
8. They traveled to the desert.
9. She bought fruit from the market.
10. He finished his project about city life.

Test on Unit 1

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1- F | 2- F | 3- T | 4- T |
|------|------|------|------|

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1- b) wells | 2- c) oasis |
| 3- d) crops | 4- a) went |
| 5- b) traveled | 6- a) visit |

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- | | |
|----------|--------------|
| 1- farms | 2- fishermen |
| 3- lunch | 4- stories |

Answers Key

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- a) challenge
- 2- d) Farms and animals

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- She worked with Sama.
- 4- People lived in tents, traveled on camels, and used wells for water.
- 5- Life in different places. (Answers may vary)

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- visited
- 2- didn't live
- 3- went
- 4- learned

6- Punctuate the following sentences:

1. Life in the desert is very simple.
2. What do you like about the city?

Revision on Unit 2

1-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Vocabulary)

- 1- b) green
- 2- a) planet
- 3- d) reuse
- 4- b) reduce
- 5- d) apply
- 6- a) litter
- 7- b) surroundings
- 8- a) resources
- 9- c) cloth
- 10- a) wisely
- 11- b) materials
- 12- d) Recycle

2-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Grammar)

- 1- c) or
- 2- a) so
- 3- d) and
- 4- a) because
- 5- c) or
- 6- d) so
- 7- a) nor
- 8- d) and
- 9- b) because
- 10- e) but

3-Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- 3Rs
- 2- reuse
- 3- recycle
- 4- bin

4-Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- reduce
- 2- pollution
- 3- electricity
- 4- litter

5-Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- less
- 2- turn off
- 3- instead
- 4- recycle

6-Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- resources
- 2- nor
- 3- tote bags
- 4- planet

7-Punctuate the following:

1. We should recycle paper and plastic.
2. Do you turn off the lights?

3. She uses a cloth bag for shopping.
4. My brother and I plant trees.
5. Why do you care for animals?
6. I avoid wasting electricity at home.
7. Does he throw litter in bins?
8. We clean our neighborhood every week.

Test on Unit 2

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- F
- 2- F
- 3- T
- 4- T

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- c) nor
- 2- d) because
- 3- d) or
- 4- b) recycled
- 5- d) planet
- 6- a) resources

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- sunlight
- 2- litter
- 3- surroundings
- 4- changes

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- b) garden
- 2- c) happy

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- They recycled plastic bottles and paper.
- 4- "You are helping our school, town, and of course, our planet!"
- 5- Because their garden looked cleaner and more beautiful.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- so
- 2- nor
- 3- and
- 4- but

6- Punctuate the following sentences:

1. This bag is made of cloth.
2. Do you keep your neighborhood clean?

Revision on Unit 3

1-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Vocabulary)

- 1- b) elderly lady
- 2- c) climb the stairs
- 3- a) delivering
- 4- c) vegetables
- 5- b) neighborhood
- 6- c) fruits
- 7- a) tomatoes
- 8- b) lettuce
- 9- d) biscuits
- 10- c) knock

2-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Grammar)

- 1- a) a glass of
- 2- b) an
- 3- c) a pack of
- 4- b) a bottle of
- 5- d) chairs
- 6- a) a piece of
- 7- c) went
- 8- d) drank
- 9- d) a kilo of
- 10- b) a

3-Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- vegetables
- 2- elderly

- 3- basket 4- promised

4- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- help 2- table
3- milk 4- chocolate

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- an 2- a cup of
3- ate 4- packed
5- an 6- some
7- some 8- tomatoes
9- sandwiches 10- bananas

6- Punctuate the following:

- I promised to help my friend tomorrow.
- What was in the picnic basket?
- Nada was hungry, so she ate some cheese.
- They drank one carton of milk with cereal.
- What fruit did they pack for the picnic?
- Who went with Kareem to the market?
- What did Noura and her mother buy first for the picnic?
- Did you help an elderly person before?
- Kareem chose a kilo of bananas, while Fatma chose a kilo of peaches.
- Our school held a picnic in Al Azhar Park.

Test on Unit 3

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- T 2- F 3- T 4- F

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- d) sellers 2- a) climb
3- b) vegetables 4- d) a
5- b) brought 6- c) apples

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- milk 2- bottle
3- chocolate 4- cheese

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- b) fruits and vegetables
2- a) climb the stairs

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- Two weeks ago.
4- They bought fruit and vegetables.
5- Helping poor people. (Answers may vary)

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- helped 2- chairs
3- some 4- an

6- Punctuate the following sentences:

1. We bought fresh vegetables from the market.

2. What did Ali choose at the market?

Revision on Unit 4

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Vocabulary)

- 1- b) play games 2- c) perform music
3- d) played 4- a) fireworks
5- c) take photos 6- a) guests
7- c) exchange 8- b) balloons
9- a) decorated 10- b) giveaways
11- a) appreciate 12- c) celebrated

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Grammar)

- 1- a) friendly 2- b) beautiful
3- c) quiet 4- a) sad
5- d) exciting 6- c) beautiful
7- b) yellow 8- d) delicious
9- c) blue 10- a) small
11- b) excited 12- a) crowded

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- balloons 2- cake
3- games 4- fireworks

4- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- celebration 2- workers
3- neighborhood 4- card

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- colorful 2- peaceful
3- excited 4- beautiful
5- busy 6- green
7- quiet 8- strong
9- amazing 10- wonderful

6- Punctuate the following:

- The colorful balloons flew in the air.
- What food did Amr bring to the family gathering?
- I played a game of chess with Kareem.
- The children like to play games like football and hide-and-seek.
- Where did the celebration take place?
- A large cake was placed on an enormous table.
- She felt excited when she saw her friends at the park.

Answers Key

8. We had an exciting day in the garden.
9. How do you celebrate your birthday?
10. Who helped Zein decorate the living room?

Test on Unit 4

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- T 2- F 3- T 4- F

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- c) perform 2- b) hung
3- c) ate special food 4- a) delicious
5- d) sad 6- b) wooden

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- perform 2- food
3- games 4- gifts

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- c) celebration
2- b) card

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- Labor Day celebration
4- The children play games, and everyone enjoys the music.
5- People share smiles, clap for the workers, and take photos.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- shiny 2- clean
3- grilled 4- amazing

6- Punctuate the following sentences:

1. Many students took photos to remember the special day.
2. What musical instrument did your uncle play?

Revision on Unit 5

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Vocabulary)

- 1- b) water springs 2- a) snorkeling
3- b) traditional life 4- a) breeze
5- c) ferry 6- d) Bedouins
7- a) hiking 8- c) seagulls
9- b) tradition 10- d) palm trees
11- a) corals 12- b) photos
13- a) walking 14- c) tents
15- b) water springs

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Grammar)

- 1- c) can't 2- d) shouldn't
3- a) should 4- d) run
5- c) we should 6- b) shouldn't
7- a) should 8- c) shouldn't
9- a) should 10- d) should

11- c) go

12- d) she shouldn't

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- snorkeling 2- corals
3- mountains 4- starfish

4- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- springs 2- Bedouins
3- tents 4- traditional

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- should 2- shouldn't
3- try 4- be
5- visit 6- wear
7- should 8- should
9- be 10- take

8- Punctuate the following:

1. We took a ferry across the canal to visit the other side.
2. I had a wonderful time at the Blue Hole.
3. How did the family cross the canal to Port Fouad?
4. Did you visit a place by the sea?
5. The sea is calm and clear today.
6. They went scuba diving in the sea.
7. How was your mid-year vacation, Salma?
8. Who lives near Oyoum Mousa, and visitors can meet?
9. The tourists slept in small tents under the stars.
10. The desert people are called Bedouins.

Test on Unit 5

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- T 2- F 3- T 4- F

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- a) tents 2- c) snorkeling
3- b) hiking 4- a) should
5- b) shouldn't 6- d) should

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- Corniche 2- cheerful
3- ferry 4- breeze

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- b) photos
2- a) modern

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- He enjoyed the fresh water springs and admired the tall palm trees around the area.
4- local Bedouins
5- A visit to Oyoum Mousa. (Answers may vary)

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- shouldn't 2- should
3- write 4- be

6- Punctuate the following sentences:

1. Oyoum Mousa is a beautiful place in South Sinai.
2. I spent my holiday in Dahab with my family.

Part 2

Weekly Evaluation

Week 1: Based on Unit 1

1- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- b) buildings 2- d) oasis
3- a) challenges 4- c) neighbors
5- a) environment 6- b) visited
7- a) took 8- c) didn't see
9- d) Did 10- b) were

Week 2: Based on Unit 1

1- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- a) fisherman 2- c) boat
3- a) crops 4- d) palm trees
5- b) stream 6- a) paths
7- d) fields 8- a) rivers
9- b) sail 10- b) peaceful

Week 3: Based on Unit 2

1- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- b) recycle 2- c) reduce
3- a) planet 4- d) go green
5- b) remind 6- a) nor
7- d) or 8- c) because
9- a) but 10- c) so

Week 4: Based on Unit 2

1- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- a) resources 2- b) wisely
3- d) run out 4- b) warm
5- a) turning off 6- b) switching off
7- c) waste 8- d) protect
9- c) difference 10- a) care

Week 5: Based on Unit 3

1- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- a) neighborhood
2- a) food packages
3- d) vegetables 4- b) climb
5- c) excited 6- a) an
7- b) books 8- d) milk
9- a) some 10- c) slice

Week 6: Based on Unit 3

1- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- b) cooler 2- a) share
3- c) healthy 4- b) crunchy
5- a) a bunch of 6- d) responsible
7- a) dessert 8- d) delicious
9- a) picnic 10- d) promised

Week 7: Based on Unit 4

1- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- a) perform 2- d) take
3- b) hide-and-seek
4- a) fireworks
5- c) socialize 6- a) colorful
7- b) peaceful 8- a) amazing
9- c) soft 10- c) happy

Week 8: Based on Unit 4

1- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- a) candles 2- d) decorate
3- c) wrapped 4- a) hang
5- c) ribbon 6- a) cheerful
7- c) giveaways 8- b) guests
9- a) shiny 10- d) fireworks

Week 9: Based on Unit 5

1- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- d) Moses Springs
2- a) springs
3- b) Bedouins 4- c) scuba diving
5- a) hiking 6- d) should
7- b) shouldn't 8- c) shouldn't
9- a) Should 10- b) shouldn't

Week 10: Based on Unit 5

1- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- a) Corniche 2- c) ferry
3- b) memorable 4- a) clear
5- d) snorkeling 6- a) amazing
7- b) adventure 8- a) cheerful
9- d) breeze 10- c) perfect

Week 11: on Unit 6 - Story

1- Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- T
2- T
3- F

2- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- c) field
2- d) dates
3- d) higher

Answers Key

Week 12: on Unit 6 - Story

1- Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1- F
- 2- T
- 3- F

2- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- d) wooden
- 2- b) shyly
- 3- a) kindness

Week 13: General

1- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- b) few
- 2- c) see
- 3- a) recycled
- 4- d) because
- 5- c) help
- 6- a) some
- 7- b) band
- 8- a) sad
- 9- b) springs
- 10- d) shouldn't

Week 14: General

1- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- d) should
- 2- c) breeze
- 3- b) giveaways
- 4- b) exciting
- 5- a) some
- 6- a) a kilo
- 7- d) resources
- 8- b) nor
- 9- a) peaceful
- 10- c) slept

Part 3

General Tests

Al-Azhar Test 1

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1- organized
- 2- cooler
- 3- follows

2- Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

- 1- visit
- 2- springs
- 3- the Bedouins
- 4- friendly

3- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- recycle
- 2- traditional
- 3- because
- 4- didn't

4- Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

- 1- some water
- 2- because
- 3- shouldn't
- 4- walked

5- Read the text and answer the questions:

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1- T
- 2- F

B) Circle the correct answer:

- 3- resources
- 4- turning of the tap
- 5- healthy

Al-Azhar Test 2

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1- clean
- 2- family
- 3- wells

2- Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

- 1- delivery
- 2- elderly
- 3- bags
- 4- packages

3- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- weather
- 2- electricity
- 3- a carton of
- 4- kind

4- Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

- 1- nor
- 2- did
- 3- go
- 4- eat

5- Read the text and answer the questions:

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1- F
- 2- T

B) Circle the correct answer:

- 3- gifts
- 4- special
- 5- cheer

Al-Azhar Test 3

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1- recycle
- 2- Earth
- 3- reuse

2- Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

- 1- energy
- 2- planet
- 3- soil
- 4- protect

3- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- celebration
- 2- ferry
- 3- should
- 4- Did

4- Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

- 1- kind
- 2- play
- 3- a pen / two pens
- 4- because

5- Read the text and answer the questions:

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1- T
- 2- F

B) Circle the correct answer:

- 3- journey
- 4- palm trees
- 5- traditional

Al-Azhar Test 4

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1- special clothes
- 2- photos
- 3- bright and cheerful

2- Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

- 1- decorated
- 2- guests
- 3- giveaways
- 4- happy

3- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- delivery 2- family gathering
3- bought 4- nor

4- Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

- 1- should 2- bought
3- so 4- visited

5- Read the text and answer the questions:

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1- T 2- F

B) Circle the correct answer:

- 3- picnic 4- snack station
5- kindness

General Test 5

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- T 2- F 3- T 4- F

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- b) reuse 2- c) oasis
3- d) food packages 4- c) peaceful
5- a) Should 6- d) some

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- Corniche 2- seagulls
3- ferry 4- seafood

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- c) father and teacher
2- d) worth remembering

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- She was happy.
4- People clapped and smiled as workers were appreciated.
5- Celebrating Labor Day.

(Answers may vary)

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- go 2- wooden
3- an 4- shouldn't

6- Punctuate the following sentences:

1. He walked in the city at night.
2. What did Youssef learn from his grandfather?

General Test 6

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- T 2- F 3- T 4- F

2- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- c) river 2- a) apply
3- b) neighborhood 4- c) piece
5- d) colorful 6- a) try

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- fields 2- stream
3- birds 4- peaceful

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- b) lights and fans 2- d) last

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- He suggested turning off the tap while brushing teeth.
4- So they don't run out.
5- We should save our natural resources. We should use them wisely.

(Answers may vary)

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- because 2- slices
3- studied 4- books

6- Punctuate the following sentences:

1. On May 1st, we celebrate Labor Day.
2. Why did Salma say people shouldn't touch corals?

General Test 7

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- T 2- F 3- T 4- F

2- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- a) take photos 2- b) litter
3- c) climb 4- d) an
5- c) played 6- c) or

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- emails 2- pollution
3- tote bags 4- bins

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- b) sail 2- c) hat

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- A trip to the Nile River. (Answers may vary)
4- He saw fishermen catching fish and green farms with vegetables and fruits.
5- He felt excited.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- bought 2- bottle
3- so 4- amazing

6- Punctuate the following sentences:

1. Why do you think family gatherings are important?
2. Air and water pollution harm animals and plants.

General Test 8

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- F 2- T 3- F 4- T

2- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- c) warm 2- d) fisherman
3- a) reduce 4- b) nor

Answers Key

- 5- c) apples 6- d) peaceful

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- water springs 2- history
3- Bedouins 4- traditional

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- c) home 2- d) Yara

(B) Answer the following questions:

3- Yara cleaned the living room and decorated it with colorful balloons. Her father helped hang shiny ribbons and bright lights.

4- They wore party hats and joined the fun.

5- Yara's birthday party.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- happy 2- an
3- held 4- because

6- Punctuate the following sentences:

1. Lina went on a trip to the mountains.
2. Did you visit a place with springs?

General Test 9

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- F 2- T 3- F 4- T

2- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- c) teacher 2- d) palm trees
3- a) pollution 4- b) so
5- d) packet 6- c) didn't

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- boat 2- fishermen
3- palm trees 4- riverbank

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- c) water 2- a) carefully

(B) Answer the following questions:

3- Our Earth and its important resources.

4- We can save water by turning off taps, and save electricity by switching off lights and fans.

5- Saving our resources is very important. (Answers may vary)

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- nor 2- moved
3- some 4- exciting

6- Punctuate the following sentences:

1. How do you celebrate your birthday?
2. People in the village follow a traditional life.

General Test 10

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- F 2- T 3- T 4- T

2- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- b) fireworks 2- c) beautiful
3- d) arranged 4- c) a
5- b) nor 6- d) travel

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- weather 2- river
3- photos 4- birds

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- a) food packages
2- d) Adam and Lina

(B) Answer the following questions:

3- Food for the poor. (Answers may vary)

4- To buy fresh vegetables and fruits.

5- They bought apples, oranges, tomatoes, cucumbers, and bread.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- so 2- walked
3- kilos 4- take

6- Punctuate the following sentences:

1. The sun is very strong in D hahab.
2. What did Zem's mother make yesterday?

General Test 11

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- T 2- F 3- T 4- t

2- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- a) distance 2- c) cafeteria
3- d) warm 4- b) an
5- a) play 6- c) nor

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- wisely 2- lights
3- teeth 4- planet

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- a) corniche 2- a) seagulls

(B) Answer the following questions:

3- They visited Port Said by the Suez Canal.

4- They saw colorful corals near the edge of the canal.

5- Everyone enjoyed walking, taking photos, and watching the boats pass by. 5

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- help 2- go
3- because 4- some

6- Punctuate the following sentences:

1. I have two bottles in my bag.
2. Can you give me this book?

General Test 12

11- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- T
- 2- F
- 3- T
- 4- F

2- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- b) corniche
- 2- a) fence
- 3- d) promise
- 4- c) pens
- 5- d) nor
- 6- c) watch

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- guests
- 2- candles
- 3- photos
- 4- joyful

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- a) energy
- 2- c) walking

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- Pollution is a big problem for our planet.
- 4- Everyone can help by saving energy, planting trees, and reducing waste.
- 5- To keep it healthy for the future.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- kind
- 2- run
- 3- and
- 4- visited

6- Punctuate the following sentences:

1. Look at the big red balloon.
2. Can you help me with this puzzle?